

---

**Note:** For information regarding conflicts of interest and depository contracts, see BDAE.

---

**Substantial Interest Affidavit**

If a local public official has a substantial interest in a business entity or in real property, the local public official shall, before a vote or decision on any matter involving the business entity or the real property, file an affidavit stating the nature and extent of the interest if:

1. In the case of a substantial interest in a business entity, the action on the matter will have a special economic effect on the business entity that is distinguishable from the effect on the public; or
2. In the case of a substantial interest in real property, it is reasonably foreseeable that an action on the matter will have a special economic effect on the value of the property, distinguishable from its effect on the public.

The affidavit shall be filed with the official recordkeeper of the district.

*Local Gov't Code 171.004(a)–(b)*

Abstention

The local public official shall also abstain from further participation in the matter.

If a trustee is required to file and does file an affidavit, that trustee shall not be required to abstain from further participation in the matter or matters requiring such an affidavit if a majority of the trustees are likewise required to file and do file affidavits of similar interests on the same official action.

*Local Gov't Code 171.004(a), (c)*

Definitions

*“Substantial Interest”*

A person has a substantial interest in a business entity if any of the following is the case:

1. The person owns at least:
  - a. Ten percent of the voting stock or shares of the business entity, or
  - b. Either ten percent or \$15,000 of the fair market value of the business entity.
2. Funds received by the person from the business entity exceed ten percent of the person’s gross income for the previous year.

*Local Gov't Code 171.002*

<i>“Business Entity”</i>	“Business entity” means a sole proprietorship, partnership, firm, corporation, holding company, joint-stock company, receivership, trust, or any other entity recognized by law. <i>Local Gov’t Code 171.001(2)</i>
<i>“First-Degree Relatives”</i>	The local public official is considered to have a substantial interest if a person related in the first degree by either affinity or consanguinity to the local public official, as determined under Government Code Chapter 573, Subchapter B [see DBE], has a substantial interest as defined above. <i>Local Gov’t Code 171.002</i>
<i>“Local Public Official”</i>	“Local public official” means a member of the governing body or another officer, whether elected, appointed, paid, or unpaid, of any district (including a school district), central appraisal district, or other local governmental entity who exercises responsibilities beyond those that are advisory in nature. <i>Local Gov’t Code 171.001(1)</i>
<i>“Real Property”</i>	A person has a substantial interest in real property if the interest is an equitable or legal ownership with a fair market value of \$2,500 or more. <i>Local Gov’t Code 171.002</i>
Contracts Permitted	A board may contract with a business entity in which a trustee has a substantial interest if the trustee follows the disclosure and abstention procedure set out above. <i>Atty. Gen. Op. JM-424 (1986)</i>
Separate Vote on Budget	A board shall take a separate vote on any budget item specifically dedicated to a contract with a business entity in which a trustee has a substantial interest. The affected trustee shall not participate in that separate vote, but may vote on a final budget if he or she filed the affidavit and the matter in which he or she is concerned has been resolved. <i>Local Gov’t Code 171.005</i>
Depository Bank	A school board member with a “substantial interest” in a depository bank must file an affidavit stating his interest and must abstain from participating in decisions on loan contracts with the depository if action on the matter will have a special economic effect on the bank that is distinguishable from the effect on the public. <i>Atty. Gen. Op. JM-1082 (1989) [See BDAE]</i>
Violations	A local public official commits an offense if the official knowingly: <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Violates Local Government Code 171.004.</li><li>2. Acts as surety for a business entity that has a contract, work, or business with a district.</li><li>3. Act as surety on any official bond required of an officer of a district.</li></ol> <i>Local Gov’t Code 171.003</i>

**Voidable Actions**            The finding by a court of a violation of Local Government Code Chapter 171 does not render an action of the board voidable unless the measure that was the subject of an action involving a conflict of interest would not have passed without the vote of the person who violated the chapter. *Local Gov't Code 171.006*

**Conflicts Disclosure Statement**

A local government officer shall file a conflicts disclosure statement, as adopted by the Texas Ethics Commission, with respect to a vendor if the vendor enters into a contract with the district or the district is considering entering into a contract with the vendor; and the vendor:

1. Has an employment or other business relationship with the local government officer or a family member of the officer, and the business relationship results in the officer or family member receiving taxable income, other than investment income, that exceeds \$2,500 during the 12-month period preceding the date that the officer becomes aware that:
  - a. A contract between the district and the vendor has been executed; or
  - b. The district is considering entering into a contract with the vendor;
2. Has given to the local government officer or a family member of the officer one or more gifts, and the gift or gifts have an aggregate value of more than \$100 in the 12-month period preceding the date the officer becomes aware that:
  - a. A contract between the district and the vendor has been executed; or
  - b. The district is considering entering into a contract with the vendor; or
3. Has a family relationship with the local government officer.

**Gifts—Exception**

A local government officer is not required to file a conflicts disclosure statement in relation to a gift, as defined by law, accepted by the officer or a family member of the officer if the gift is:

1. A political contribution as defined by Title 15, Election Code; or
2. Food accepted as a guest.

*Local Gov't Code 176.003(a)–(a-1)*

**Filing Date**

A local government officer shall file the conflicts disclosure statement with the records administrator of a district not later than 5:00 p.m. on the seventh business day after the date on which the

	officer becomes aware of the facts that require the filing of the statement. <i>Local Gov't Code 176.003(b)</i>
Vendor Questionnaire	A person who is both a local government officer and a vendor of a local governmental entity is required to file a vendor questionnaire if the person enters or seeks to enter into a contract with the local governmental entity; or is an agent of a person who enters or seeks to enter into a contract with the local governmental entity. [See CHE] <i>Local Gov't Code 176.006(e)</i>
Definitions "Agent"	"Agent" means a third party who undertakes to transact some business or manage some affair for another person by the authority or on account of the other person. The term includes an employee. <i>Local Gov't Code 176.001(1)</i>
"Business Relationship"	"Business relationship" means a connection between two or more parties based on commercial activity of one of the parties. The term does not include a connection based on: <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. A transaction that is subject to rate or fee regulation by a federal, state, or local governmental entity or an agency of a federal, state, or local governmental entity;</li><li>2. A transaction conducted at a price and subject to terms available to the public; or</li><li>3. A purchase or lease of goods or services from a person that is chartered by a state or federal agency and that is subject to regular examination by, and reporting to, that agency.</li></ol> <i>Local Gov't Code 176.001(a-1)</i>
"Family Member"	"Family member" means a person related to another person within the first degree by consanguinity or affinity, as described by Government Code Chapter 573, Subchapter B. [See DBE] <i>Local Gov't Code 176.001(2)</i>
"Family Relationship"	"Family relationship" means a relationship between a person and another person within the third degree by consanguinity or the second degree by affinity, as those terms are defined by Government Code Chapter 573, Subchapter B. [See DBE] <i>Local Gov't Code 176.001(2-a)</i>
"Gift"	"Gift" means a benefit offered by a person, including food, lodging, transportation, and entertainment accepted as a guest. The term does not include a benefit offered on account of kinship or a personal, professional, or business relationship independent of the official status of the recipient. <i>Local Gov't Code 176.001(2-b)</i>

*“Investment  
Income”*

“Investment income” means dividends, capital gains, or interest income generated from:

1. A personal or business:
  - a. Checking or savings account,
  - b. Share draft or share account, or
  - c. Other similar account;
2. A personal or business investment; or
3. A personal or business loan.

*Local Gov’t Code 176.001(2-d)*

*“Local  
Government  
Officer”*

“Local government officer” means a member of the board, the superintendent, or an agent (including an employee) of the district who exercises discretion in the planning, recommending, selecting, or contracting of a vendor. *Local Gov’t Code 176.001(4)*

*“Records  
Administrator”*

“Records administrator” means the director, superintendent, or other person responsible for maintaining the records of a district or another person designated by the district to maintain statements and questionnaires filed under Local Government Code 176 and perform related functions. *Local Gov’t Code 176.001(5)* [See CPC]

*“Vendor”*

“Vendor” means a person who enters or seeks to enter into a contract with a local governmental entity. The term includes an agent of a vendor. The term includes an officer or employee of a state agency when that individual is acting in a private capacity to enter into a contract. The term does not include a state agency except for Texas Correctional Industries. *Local Gov’t Code 176.001(7)*

Duties of Records  
Administrator

A records administrator shall:

1. Maintain a list of local government officers of the district and shall make that list available to the public and any vendor who may be required to file a conflict of interest questionnaire under Local Government Code 176.006; and
2. Maintain the statements and questionnaires that are required to be filed under Government Code Chapter 176 in accordance with the district’s records retention schedule. [See CPC]

*Local Gov’t Code 176.0065*

Internet Posting

A district that maintains an internet website shall provide access on the district’s internet website to the conflicts disclosure statements and questionnaires required to be filed with the records administrator. *Local Gov’t Code 176.009*

Violations

A local government officer commits an offense if the officer is required to file a conflicts disclosure statement and knowingly fails to file the required conflicts disclosure statement with the appropriate records administrator not later than 5 p.m. on the seventh business day after the date on which the officer becomes aware of the facts that require the filing of the statement. It is an exception to the application of the penalty that the local government officer filed the required conflicts disclosure statement not later than the seventh business day after receiving notice from the district of the alleged violation.

A board may reprimand, suspend, or terminate the employment of an employee who knowingly fails to comply with a requirement adopted under Local Government Code 176. [See DF series]

A board may, at its discretion, declare a contract void if the board determines that a vendor failed to file a conflict of interest questionnaire required by Local Government Code 176.006.

*Local Gov't Code 176.013*

**Affidavit Disclosing  
Interest in Property**

If a public servant has a legal or equitable interest in any property that is to be acquired with public funds, and has actual notice of the acquisition or intended acquisition of the property, the public servant shall file an affidavit as follows:

1. The affidavit shall be filed with the county clerk(s) of the county or counties in which the property is located and of the county in which the public servant resides within ten days before the date on which the property is to be acquired by purchase or condemnation.
2. The affidavit must:
  - a. State the name of the public servant and the public office title or job designation held or sought.
  - b. Fully describe the property.
  - c. Fully describe the nature, type, and amount of interest in the property, including the percentage of ownership interest and the date the interest was acquired.
  - d. Include a verification of the truth of the information in the affidavit.
  - e. Include an acknowledgment of the same type required for recording a deed in the deed records of a county.

*Gov't Code 553.002*

“Public Servant”—  
Government Code

“Public servant” means a person who is elected, appointed, employed, or designated, even if not yet qualified for or having assumed the duties of office, as:

1. A candidate for nomination or election to public office, or
2. An officer of government.

*Gov’t Code 553.001*

Violations

A public servant who fails to file the affidavit when required is presumed to have the intent to commit an offense. An offense under this section is a Class A misdemeanor. *Gov’t Code 553.003*

**Annual Financial  
Management Report**

A district’s annual financial management report shall include summary schedules of expenditures paid on behalf of each board member, reimbursements received by each board member, gifts with a total value over \$250 received by board members from certain vendors, and amounts received by board members for business transactions with the district. [See CFA] *Education Code 39.083; 19 TAC 109.1001(q)*

**Trustee Financial  
Statement**

A board by resolution adopted by majority vote may require each member of the board to file the financial statement required of state officers under Subchapter B, Chapter 572, Government Code, with the board and the Texas Ethics Commission.

Not later than the 15th day after the date a board adopts this resolution, the board shall deliver a certified copy of the resolution to the Texas Ethics Commission. A resolution applies beginning on January 1 of the second year following the year in which the resolution is adopted. A member of a board that has adopted a resolution is not required to include, in a financial disclosure statement, financial activity occurring before January 1 of the year following the year in which the resolution is adopted.

The commissioner of education (“commissioner”) by order shall require the members of a board to file the financial statement required of state officers under Subchapter B, Chapter 572, Government Code, in the same manner as the members of the board that have adopted a resolution if the commissioner determines that:

1. A board member has failed to comply with filing and recusal requirements applicable to the member under Chapter 171, Local Government Code;
2. District financial accounting practices are not adequate to safeguard state and district funds; or
3. A district has not met a standard set by the commissioner in the financial accountability rating system.



The commissioner may require the filing of financial statements covering not more than three fiscal years and beginning on January 1 of the second year following the date of the commissioner's order. A member of a board subject to an order issued by the commissioner is not required to include, in a financial disclosure statement, financial activity occurring before January 1 of the year following the year in which the order is issued. The commissioner may renew the requirement if the commissioner determines that a condition described above continues to exist.

*Education Code 11.064*

**Electronic Filing** A financial statement filed with the Ethics Commission must be filed by computer diskette, modem, or other means of electronic transfer, using computer software provided by the commission or computer software that meets commission specifications for a standard file format. An individual who was appointed to office may file the financial statement by certified mail in compliance with Government Code 572.029. *Gov't Code 572.0291*

**Confidentiality** Electronic report or financial statement data saved in an Ethics Commission temporary storage location for later retrieval and editing before the report or financial statement is filed is confidential and may not be disclosed. After the report or financial statement is filed with the Ethics Commission, the information disclosed in the filed report or financial statement is public information to the extent provided by the law requiring the filing of the report or financial statement. *Gov't Code 571.0671(d)*

**Violations** A trustee serving in a school district that has adopted a resolution or that is subject to an order issued by the commissioner commits an offense if the trustee fails to file the statement required by the resolution or order. An offense under this section is a Class B misdemeanor. *Education Code 11.064(c)*

---

**Note:** See also CBB for conflict of interest requirements when federal funds are involved.

---

**Private Corporation** It is lawful for a local public official to serve as a member of the board of directors of private, nonprofit corporations when such officials receive no compensation or other remuneration from the nonprofit corporation or other nonprofit entity. *Local Gov't Code 171.009*



**Prohibited Activities  
by Public Servants—  
State Law**

“Public servant” means a person elected, selected, appointed, employed, or otherwise designated as one of the following, even if the person has not yet qualified for office or assumed his or her duties:

1. An officer, employee, or agent of government; or
2. A candidate for nomination or election to public office.

*Penal Code 1.07(a)(41)(A), (E)*

Bribery

A person commits an offense if the person intentionally or knowingly offers, confers, or agrees to confer on another, or solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept from another, any benefit:

1. As consideration for the recipient’s decision, opinion, recommendation, vote, or other exercise of discretion as a public servant or voter;
2. As consideration for a violation of a duty imposed by law on a public servant; or
3. That is a political contribution as defined by Election Code Title 15 or an expenditure made and reported in accordance with Government Code Chapter 305 (regarding registration of lobbyists), if the benefit was offered, conferred, solicited, accepted, or agreed to pursuant to an express agreement to take or withhold a specific exercise of official discretion, if such exercise of official discretion would not have been taken or withheld but for the benefit.

“Benefit” means anything reasonably regarded as pecuniary gain or pecuniary advantage, including benefit to any other person in whose welfare the beneficiary has a direct and substantial interest.

*Penal Code 36.01(3), .02*

Illegal Gifts

A public servant who exercises discretion in connection with contracts, purchases, payments, claims, or other pecuniary transactions of government commits an offense if the public servant solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept any benefit from a person the public servant knows is interested in or likely to become interested in any contract, purchase, payment, claim or transaction involving the exercise of the public servant’s discretion. *Penal Code 36.08(d)*

A public servant who receives an unsolicited benefit that the public servant is prohibited from accepting under the provision above may donate the benefit to a governmental entity that has the authority to accept the gift or may donate the benefit to a recognized tax-exempt charitable organization formed for educational, religious, or scientific purposes. *Penal Code 36.08(d), (i)*

*Exceptions*

Illegal Gifts does not apply to:

1. A fee prescribed by law to be received by a public servant or any other benefit to which the public servant is lawfully entitled or for which the public servant gives legitimate consideration in a capacity other than as a public servant;
2. A gift or other benefit conferred on account of kinship or a personal, professional, or business relationship independent of the official status of the recipient;
3. A benefit to a public servant required to file a statement under Government Code Chapter 572, or a report under Election Code Title 15, that is derived from a function in honor or appreciation of the recipient if:
  - a. The benefit and the source of any benefit in excess of \$50 is reported in the statement; and
  - b. The benefit is used solely to defray the expenses that accrue in the performance of duties or activities in connection with the office which are nonreimbursable by the state or political subdivision;
4. A political contribution as defined by Election Code Title 15;
5. An item with a value of less than \$50, excluding cash or a negotiable instrument as described by Business and Commerce Code 3.104;
6. An item issued by a governmental entity that allows the use of property or facilities owned, leased, or operated by the governmental entity; or
7. Food, lodging, transportation, or entertainment accepted as a guest and, if the donee is required by law to report those items, reported by the donee in accordance with that law.

*Penal Code 36.10*

Honoraria and  
Expenses

A public servant commits an offense if the public servant solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept an honorarium in consideration for services that the public servant would not have been requested to provide but for the person's official position or duties. This provision does not prohibit a public servant from accepting transportation and lodging expenses or meals in connection with a conference or similar event in which the public servant renders services, such as addressing an audience or engaging in a seminar, to the extent those services are more than merely perfunctory. *Penal Code 36.07*

Abuse of Official  
Capacity

A public servant commits an offense if, with intent to obtain a benefit or with intent to harm or defraud another, intentionally or knowingly violates a law relating to the office or employment, or misuses government property, services, personnel, or any other thing of value, belonging to the government that has come into the public servant's custody by virtue of the person's office or employment.  
*Penal Code 39.02(a)*

"Law relating to a public servant's office or employment" means a law that specifically applies to a person acting in the capacity of a public servant and that directly or indirectly imposes a duty on the public servant or governs the conduct of the public servant. *Penal Code 39.01(1)*

"Misuse" means to deal with property contrary to:

1. An agreement under which the public servant holds the property;
2. A contract of employment or oath of office of a public servant;
3. A law, including provisions of the General Appropriations Act specifically relating to government property, that prescribes the manner of custody or disposition of the property; or
4. A limited purpose for which the property is delivered or received.

*Penal Code 39.01(2)*

**Official Oppression**

A public servant acting under color of the public servant's office or employment commits an offense if the public servant intentionally subjects another to sexual harassment.

A public servant acts under color of the public servant's office or employment if the person acts or purports to act in an official capacity or takes advantage of such actual or purported capacity.

"Sexual harassment" means unwelcome sexual advances, requests for sexual favors, or other verbal or physical conduct of a sexual nature, submission to which is made a term or condition of a person's exercise or enjoyment of any right, privilege, power, or immunity, either explicitly or implicitly.

*Penal Code 39.03(a)(3), (b), (c)*

**Misuse of Official  
Information**

A public servant commits an offense if, in reliance on information to which the public servant has access by virtue of the person's office or employment and that has not been made public, the person:

1. Acquires or aids another to acquire a pecuniary interest in any property, transaction, or enterprise that may be affected by the information;
2. Speculates or aids another to speculate on the basis of the information; or
3. As a public servant, including as a school administrator, coerces another into suppressing or failing to report that information to a law enforcement agency.

A public servant commits an offense if with intent to obtain a benefit or with intent to harm or defraud another, the public servant discloses or uses information for a nongovernmental purpose that:

1. The person has access to by means of the person's office or employment; and
2. Has not been made public.

"Information that has not been made public" means any information to which the public does not generally have access, and that is prohibited from disclosure under Government Code Chapter 552 (the Public Information Act).

*Penal Code 39.06(a), (b), (d)*

### **Nepotism**

Except as provided by law, a public official may not appoint, confirm the appointment of, or vote for the appointment or confirmation of the appointment of an individual to a position that is to be directly or indirectly compensated from public funds or fees of office if:

1. The individual is related to the public official within the third degree by consanguinity (blood) or within the second degree by affinity (marriage); or
2. The public official holds the appointment or confirmation authority as a member of a local board and the individual is related to another member of the board within a prohibited degree.

*Gov't Code 573.002, .041 [See DBE]*

"Public official" means:

1. An officer of this state or of a district, county, municipality, precinct, school district, or other political subdivision of this state; or

2. An officer or member of a board of this state or of a district, county, municipality, school district, or other political subdivision of this state.

*Gov't Code 573.001(3)*

The nepotism law governs the hiring of an individual, whether the individual is hired as an employee or an independent contractor.  
*Atty. Gen. Op. DM-76 (1992)*

A public official may not approve an account or draw or authorize the drawing of a warrant or order to pay the compensation of an ineligible individual if the official knows the individual is ineligible.  
*Gov't Code 573.083*

*Counties with  
Population  
35,000 or More*

If, under the district's employment policy [see DC], the board delegates to a superintendent the final authority to select district personnel:

1. The superintendent is a public official for the purposes of the nepotism prohibitions of Government Code Chapter 573 only with respect to a decision made under that delegation of authority; and
2. Each member of the board remains subject to the nepotism prohibitions with respect to all district employees.

For purposes of this provision, a person hired by a district before September 1, 2007, is considered to have been in continuous employment [see DBE] and is not prohibited from continuing employment with the district subject to the abstention requirements.

*Education Code 11.1513(f), (h)*

*Counties with  
Population Less  
Than 35,000*

The provisions at Counties with Population 35,000 or More do not apply to a district that is located:

1. Wholly in a county with a population of less than 35,000; or
2. In more than one county, if the county in which the largest portion of district territory is located has a population of less than 35,000.

*Education Code 11.1513(g)*

A member of a board that has delegated to the superintendent final authority for personnel selection is not a public official with appointment authority for purposes of the nepotism prohibitions of Government Code 573.041. *Atty. Gen. Op. GA-123 (2003)*

With respect to renewed contracts, however, board members may be the relevant public officials for nepotism purposes. *Atty. Gen. Op. GA-177 (2004)*

**Former Board  
Member Employment**

A trustee of a district may not accept employment with the district until the first anniversary of the date the trustee's membership on the board ends. *Education Code 11.063*

**Incompatibility of  
Office**

The common law rule of incompatibility prohibits one person from holding two offices if the duties are in conflict or if one is subordinate to the other. Offices are legally incompatible when the faithful and independent exercise of one would necessarily interfere with the faithful and independent exercise of the other. *Thomas v. Abernathy County Line Indep. Sch. Dist.*, 290 S.W. 152 (Tex. Comm. App. 1927); *Turner v. Trinity Indep. Sch. Dist.*, 700 S.W.2d 1 (Tex. Ct. App. 1983); *Atty. Gen. Op. JM-634 (1987), MW-450 (1982)*

**Instructional  
Materials Violations**

Rebates

A trustee commits an offense if the trustee receives any commission or rebate on any instructional materials or technological equipment used in the schools with which the trustee is associated.

Gifts

A trustee commits an offense if the trustee accepts a gift, favor, or service that:

1. Is given to the person or the person's school;
2. Might reasonably tend to influence a trustee in the selection of instructional material or technological equipment; and
3. Could not be lawfully purchased with state instructional materials funds.

"Gift, favor, or service" does not include staff development, in-service, or teacher training; or ancillary materials, such as maps or worksheets, that convey information to the student or otherwise contribute to the learning process.

*Education Code 31.152*

Free Materials

A person commits an offense if the person knowingly violates any law providing for the purchase or distribution of free instructional materials for the public schools. *Education Code 31.153*

**Prohibited Activities  
by Public Servants—  
Federal Law**

Bribery—General

"Public official" includes a person acting for or on behalf of the United States, or any department, agency, or branch thereof, in any official function, under or by authority of any such department, agency, or branch of government. The term includes any person who has been nominated or appointed to be a public official, or has been officially informed that such person will be so nominated or appointed. *18 U.S.C. 201(a); Dixson v. U.S.*, 465 U.S. 482, 499 (1984) ("To be a public official under section 201(a), an individual

*must possess some degree of official responsibility for carrying out a federal program or policy.”); U.S. v. Franco, 632 F.3d 880 (5th Cir. 2011)*

A public official commits an offense if the public official, directly or indirectly, corruptly demands, seeks, receives, accepts, or agrees to receive or accept anything of value personally or for any other person or entity, in return for:

1. Being influenced in the performance of any official act;
2. Being influenced to commit or aid in committing, or to collude in, or allow, any fraud, or make opportunity for the commission of any fraud, on the United States; or
3. Being induced to do or omit to do any act in violation of the official duty of such official or person.

*18 U.S.C. 201(b)(2)*

Bribery—Federal  
Programs

“Agent” means a person authorized to act on behalf of another person or a government and, in the case of a government, includes a servant or employee, and a partner, director, officer, manager, and representative.

“Government agency” means a subdivision of the executive, legislative, judicial, or other branch of government, including a department, independent establishment, commission, administration, authority, board, and bureau, and a corporation or other legal entity established, and subject to control, by a government or governments for the execution of a governmental or intergovernmental program.

If a district receives, in any one year period, benefits in excess of \$10,000 under a federal program involving a grant, contract, subsidy, loan, guarantee, insurance, or other form of federal assistance, an agent of the district commits an offense if the agent:

1. Embezzles, steals, obtains by fraud, or otherwise without authority knowingly converts to the use of any person other than the rightful owner or intentionally misapplies, property that:
  - a. Is valued at \$5,000 or more, and
  - b. Is owned by, or is under the care, custody, or control of the district; or
2. Corruptly solicits or demands for the benefit of any person, or accepts or agrees to accept, anything of value from any person, intending to be influenced or rewarded in connection with



any business, transaction, or series of transactions of the district involving anything of value of \$5,000 or more.

This provision does not apply to bona fide salary, wages, fees, or other compensation paid, or expenses paid or reimbursed, in the usual course of business.

*18 U.S.C. 666*

SUPERINTENDENT  
QUALIFICATIONS AND DUTIES

BJA  
(LOCAL)

**Duties**

In addition to responsibilities specifically provided by law or in the Superintendent's contract, the Superintendent shall provide educational leadership, demonstrate district management, and maintain positive Board and community relations.

Educational  
Leadership

To provide leadership and direction for the development of an educational system that is based on the needs of students, on standards of excellence and equity, and on community goals, the Superintendent shall:

1. Establish effective mechanisms for communication to and from staff in instructional evaluation, planning, and decision making.
2. Oversee annual planning for instructional improvement and monitor for effectiveness.
3. Ensure that goals and objectives form the basis of curricular decision making and instruction and communicate expectations for high achievement.
4. Ensure that appropriate data are used in developing recommendations and making decisions regarding the instructional program and resources.
5. Oversee a system for regular evaluation of instructional programs, including identifying areas for improvement, to attain desired student achievement.
6. Oversee student services, including health and safety services, counseling services, and extracurricular programs, and monitor for effectiveness.
7. Oversee a discipline management program and monitor for equity and effectiveness.
8. Encourage, oversee, and participate in activities for recognition of student efforts and accomplishments.
9. Oversee a program of staff development and monitor staff development for effectiveness in improving district performance.
10. Stay abreast of developments in educational leadership and administration.

District  
Management

To demonstrate effective planning and management of District administration, finances, operations, and personnel, the Superintendent shall:

SUPERINTENDENT  
QUALIFICATIONS AND DUTIES

BJA  
(LOCAL)

1. Implement and oversee a planning process that results in goals, targets, or priorities for all major areas of District operations, including facilities maintenance and operations, transportation, and food services.
2. Monitor effectiveness of District operations against appropriate benchmarks.
3. Oversee procedures to ensure effective and timely compliance with all legal obligations, reporting requirements, and policies.
4. Ensure that key planning activities within the District are coordinated and are consistent with Board policy and applicable law and that goals and results are communicated to staff, students, and the public as appropriate.
5. Oversee a budget development process that results in recommendations based on District priorities, available resources, and anticipated changes to district finances.
6. Oversee budget implementation to ensure appropriate expenditure of budgeted funds, to provide for clear and timely budget reports, and to monitor for effectiveness of the process.
7. Ensure that District investment strategies, risk management activities, and purchasing practices are sound, cost-effective, and consistent with District policy and law.
8. Maintain a system of internal controls to deter and monitor for fraud or financial impropriety in the District.
9. Ensure that the system for recruiting and selection results in personnel recommendations based on defined needs, goals, and priorities.
10. Organize District staff in a manner consistent with District priorities and resources and monitor administrative organization at all levels for effectiveness and efficiency.
11. Oversee a performance appraisal process for all staff that reinforces a standard of excellence and assesses deficiencies; ensure that results are used in planning for improvement.
12. Administer a compensation and benefits plan for employees based on clearly defined goals and priorities.
13. Encourage, oversee, and participate in staff recognition and support activities.

SUPERINTENDENT  
QUALIFICATIONS AND DUTIES

BJA  
(LOCAL)

14. Oversee a program for staff retention and monitor for effectiveness.

Board and  
Community  
Relations

To maintain positive and professional working relationships with the Board and the community, the Superintendent shall:

1. Keep the Board informed of significant issues as they arise, using agreed upon criteria and procedures for information dissemination.
2. Respond in a timely and complete manner to Board requests for information that are consistent with Board policy and established procedures.
3. Provide recommendations and appropriate supporting materials to the Board on matters for Board decision.
4. Articulate and support Board policy and decisions to staff and community.
5. Direct a proactive program of internal and external communication at all levels designed to improve staff and community understanding and support of the District.
6. Establish mechanisms for community and business involvement in the schools and encourage participation.
7. Work with other governmental entities and community organizations to meet the needs of students and the community in a coordinated way.

**Delegation**

To the extent permitted by law, the Superintendent may delegate responsibilities to other employees of the District but shall remain accountable to the Board for the performance of all duties, delegated or otherwise.

**Employment and  
Evaluation**

The board shall adopt a policy providing for the employment and duties of district personnel. The employment policy must provide that the board employs and evaluates the superintendent. *Education Code 11.1513(a)(1)* [See DC]

**Appraisal Process**

A board shall appraise a superintendent annually using either:

1. The commissioner's recommended appraisal process and criteria; or
2. An appraisal process and performance criteria that are:
  - a. Developed by the district in consultation with the district- and campus-level committees; and
  - b. Adopted by the board.

*Education Code 21.354(c)*

In addition to other procedures and criteria determined by the board, the commissioner's recommended appraisal process and criteria shall include, at a minimum, an annual evaluation of the superintendent and a student performance domain. *19 TAC 150.1031*

Annual  
Performance Report

The information in the annual report describing the educational performance of a district [see AIB] shall be a primary consideration of the board in evaluating the superintendent. *Education Code 39.307(3)(C)*

**Penalty for  
Noncompliance**

Funds of the district may not be used to pay a superintendent who has not been appraised in the preceding 15 months. *Education Code 21.354(d)*

**Confidentiality**

A document evaluating the performance of a superintendent is confidential and is not subject to disclosure under the Public Information Act, Government Code Chapter 552. [See GBA]

A district may give TEA a document evaluating the performance of a superintendent employed by the district for purposes of an investigation conducted by TEA. A document provided to TEA remains confidential unless the document becomes part of the record in a contested case under the Administrative Procedure Act, Government Code Chapter 2001.

Except as provided by a court order prohibiting disclosure, a document provided to TEA may be used in a disciplinary proceeding against a superintendent if the document may be admitted under rules of evidence applicable to a contested case under Government Code 2001.081.

*Education Code 21.355*

The Texas Education Agency (TEA) may enter into an agreement with a federal agency concerning a project related to education, including provision of school lunches and construction of school buildings. TEA, or another state agency designated by the governor, shall coordinate the actions of a district participating in a federal financial assistance program. *Education Code 7.021(b), (c); Gov't Code 742.003*

**Retirement and  
Insurance  
Contributions**

Under the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Benefits Act, Insurance Code Chapter 1575, a district that applies for money provided by the United States or a privately sponsored source shall, if any of the money will pay part or all of an active employee's salary, also apply for any legally available money to pay state contributions required by Insurance Code Chapter 1575, Subchapter E. *Insurance Code 1575.252*

Such district must comply with the requirements of Insurance Code Chapter 1575, Subchapter F. *Insurance Code 1575.252(2)–.257*

Under the Teacher Retirement System, Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C, if a district applies for money provided by the United States, an agency of the United States, or a privately sponsored source, and if any of the money will pay part or all of an employee's salary, the district shall apply for any legally available money to pay state contributions required by Government Code 825.404 or 830.201. *Gov't Code 825.406(a)*

Such district must comply with the requirements of Government Code 825.406.

**Block Grant Funds**

If a district receives more than \$5,000 in block grant funds to be used as the district determines is appropriate, it shall provide evidence to TEA that a public meeting or hearing was held in a timely manner solely to seek public comment on the needs or uses of block grant funds received by the district. The board may hold this meeting or hearing in conjunction with another board meeting or hearing if the meeting or hearing to consider block grant funds is clearly noted in an announcement of the other meeting or hearing. *Gov't Code 2105.058*

**Education  
Department General  
Administrative  
Regulations  
(EDGAR)**

---

**Note:** For information regarding procurement under state law, see the CH policy series regarding Purchasing and Acquisition and the CV series regarding Facilities Construction.

For additional legal requirements applicable to school nutrition procurement, see COA.

---

EDGAR means the Education Department General Administrative Regulations (34 C.F.R. 75, 76, 77, 79, 81, 82, 84, 86, 97, 98, and 99). *34 C.F.R. 77.1(c)*

Uniform Guidance

The Department of Education (DOE) adopts the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Guidance in 2 C.F.R. Part 200 Uniform Guidance, except for 2 C.F.R. 200.102(a) and 2 C.F.R. 200.207(a). Thus, 2 C.F.R. Chapter XXXIV, Part 3474 gives regulatory effect to the OMB guidance and supplements the guidance as needed for the DOE. *2 C.F.R. 3474.1*

The Uniform Guidance establishes uniform administrative requirements, cost principles, and audit requirements for federal awards to non-federal entities, including school districts. *2 C.F.R. 200.64(j), .69, .100*

---

**Note:** The Uniform Guidance applies to all new grant awards and non-competing continuations (NCCs) made on or after December 26, 2014 (see 2 C.F.R. 200.110).

For more information on EDGAR, the Uniform Guidance, and the federal regulations that apply to federal education grant awards, visit TEA's [EDGAR Materials and Resources](#)<sup>1</sup> and the DOE's [EDGAR website](#),<sup>2</sup> [Uniform Guidance website](#),<sup>3</sup> and [FAQs](#).<sup>4</sup>

---

*General  
Compliance*

A district is responsible for complying with all requirements of the federal award. *2 C.F.R. 200.300(b)*

*Disclosures  
Conflicts*

A district must disclose in writing any potential conflict of interest to the federal awarding agency (e.g., DOE) or pass-through entity (e.g., TEA) in accordance with applicable federal awarding agency policy. *2 C.F.R. 200.112*

*Crimes*

A district must disclose, in a timely manner, in writing to the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity all violations of federal criminal law involving fraud, bribery, or gratuity violations potentially affecting the federal award. Failure to make required disclosures can result in any of the remedies described in 2 C.F.R. 200.338 (Remedies for Noncompliance), including suspension or debarment. *2 C.F.R. 200.113*

*Procurement  
Standards  
District  
Procedures*

The district must use its own documented procurement procedures [see below at Competition] which reflect applicable state, local, and tribal laws and regulations, provided that the procurements conform to applicable federal law and the standards identified in the Uniform Guidance.



STATE AND FEDERAL REVENUE SOURCES  
FEDERAL

CBB  
(LEGAL)

Oversight	The district must maintain oversight to ensure that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.
Conflicts of Interest	The district must maintain written standards of conduct covering conflicts of interest and governing the actions of its employees engaged in the selection, award, and administration of contracts. No employee, officer, or agent may participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract supported by a federal award if he or she has a real or apparent conflict of interest. A conflict of interest would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any member of his or her immediate family, his or her partner, or an organization that employs or is about to employ any of these parties, has a financial or other interest in or a tangible personal benefit from a firm considered for a contract. The officers, employees, and agents of the district must neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors, or anything of monetary value from contractors or parties to subcontracts. However, districts may set standards for situations in which the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal value. The standards of conduct must provide for disciplinary actions to be applied for violations of such standards by officers, employees, or agents of the district. [See BBFA, CAA(LOCAL), CB(LOCAL), DBD]
Records	The district must maintain records sufficient to detail the history of procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to the following: rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price. [See Pre-procurement Review and Contract Cost and Price, below]  <i>2 C.F.R. 200.318</i>
<i>Financial Management</i>	The district's financial management systems, including records documenting compliance with federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the federal award, must be sufficient to permit the preparation of reports required by general and program-specific terms and conditions; and the tracing of funds to a level of expenditures adequate to establish that such funds have been used according to the federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the federal award.  The district's financial management system must comply with 2 C.F.R. 200.302(b).  <i>2 C.F.R. 200.302 [see also 2 C.F.R. 200.333 (Retention Requirements for Records), .334 (Requests for Transfer of Records), .335 (Methods for Collection, Transmission and Storage of Information),</i>

*.336 (Access to Records), and .337 (Restrictions on Public Access to Records)]*

Internal Controls

The district must:

1. Establish and maintain effective internal control over the federal award that provides reasonable assurance that the district is managing the award in compliance with federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the award. These internal controls should be in compliance with guidance in “Standards for Internal Control in the Federal Government” issued by the Comptroller General of the United States or the “Internal Control Integrated Framework” issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).
2. Comply with federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of the award.
3. Evaluate and monitor the district’s compliance with statutes, regulations and the terms and conditions of federal awards.
4. Take prompt action when instances of noncompliance are identified including noncompliance identified in audit findings.
5. Take reasonable measures to safeguard protected personally identifiable information and other information the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity designates as sensitive or the district considers sensitive consistent with applicable federal, state, local, and tribal laws regarding privacy and obligations of confidentiality.

*2 C.F.R. 200.303*

“Internal controls” means a process, implemented by a district, designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the achievement of objectives in the following categories:

1. Effectiveness and efficiency of operations;
2. Reliability of reporting for internal and external use; and
3. Compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

*2 C.F.R. 200.61*

*Competition*

All procurement transactions must be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of 2 C.F.R. 200.319. In order to ensure objective contractor performance and eliminate unfair competitive advantage, contractors that develop or draft specifications, requirements, statements of work,

or invitations for bids or requests for proposals must be excluded from competing for such procurements.

The district must conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed state, local, or tribal geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this provision preempts state licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering services, geographic location may be a selection criterion provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

The district must have written procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures must ensure that all solicitations meet the requirements of 2 C.F.R. 200.319(c). [See above at General Procurement Standards]

The district must ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, the district must not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

*2 C.F.R. 200.319*

*Procurement  
Methods*

The district must use one of the following methods of procurement.  
*2 C.F.R. 200.320*

---

**Note:** For information on the amounts of the micro-purchase threshold and the simplified acquisition threshold, see [OMB Memorandum M-18-18<sup>5</sup>](#) and TEA's [To the Administrator Addressed letter<sup>6</sup>](#) (August 28, 2018). For information regarding these thresholds and school nutrition purchases, contact the Texas Department of Agriculture.

---

Micro-  
Purchases

Procurement by micro-purchase is the acquisition of supplies or services, the aggregate dollar amount of which does not exceed the micro-purchase threshold. To the extent practicable, the district must distribute micro-purchases equitably among qualified suppliers. Micro-purchases may be awarded without soliciting competitive quotations if the district considers the price to be reasonable. *2 C.F.R. 200.320(a)*

“Micro-purchase” means a purchase of supplies or services using simplified acquisition procedures, the aggregate amount of which does not exceed the micro-purchase threshold. Micro-purchase

procedures comprise a subset of a district's small purchase procedures. The district uses such procedures in order to expedite the completion of its lowest-dollar small purchase transactions and minimize the associated administrative burden and cost. The micro-purchase threshold is set by the Federal Acquisition Regulation at 48 C.F.R. Subpart 2.1 Definitions. *2 C.F.R. 200.67*

Small  
Purchases

Small purchase procedures are those relatively simple and informal procurement methods for securing services, supplies, or other property that do not cost more than the simplified acquisition threshold. If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations must be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources. *2 C.F.R. 200.320(b)*

*"Simplified  
Acquisition  
Threshold"*

"Simplified acquisition threshold" means the dollar amount below which a district may purchase property or services using small purchase methods. Districts adopt small purchase procedures in order to expedite the purchase of items costing less than the simplified acquisition threshold. The simplified acquisition threshold is set by the Federal Acquisition Regulation at 48 C.F.R. Subpart 2.1 Definitions and in accordance with 41 U.S.C. 1908. *2 C.F.R. 200.88*

Sealed Bids

Bids are publicly solicited and a firm fixed price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bid method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions set out below apply.

In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

1. A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;
2. Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively for the business; and
3. The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

1. Bids must be solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers, providing them sufficient response time prior to the date set for opening the bids, for local governments, the invitation for bids must be publicly advertised;

2. The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, must define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;
3. All bids will be opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids, and for local governments, the bids must be opened publicly;
4. A firm fixed price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs must be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and
5. Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

*2 C.F.R. 200.320(c)*

Competitive  
Proposals

The technique of competitive proposals is normally conducted with more than one source submitting an offer, and either a fixed price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. It is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. If this method is used, the following requirements apply:

1. Requests for proposals must be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Any response to publicized requests for proposals must be considered to the maximum extent practical;
2. Proposals must be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources;
3. The district must have a written method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and for selecting recipients;
4. Contracts must be awarded to the responsible firm whose proposal is most advantageous to the program, with price and other factors considered; and
5. The district may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby competitors' qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified competitor is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional

services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

*2 C.F.R. 200.320(d)*

Sole Source

Procurement by noncompetitive proposals is procurement through solicitation of a proposal from only one source and may be used only when one or more of the following circumstances apply:

1. The item is available only from a single source;
2. The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation;
3. The federal awarding agency or pass-through entity expressly authorizes noncompetitive proposals in response to a written request from the non-federal entity; or
4. After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

*2 C.F.R. 200.320(f)*

Cooperative  
Purchasing

To foster greater economy and efficiency, and in accordance with efforts to promote cost-effective use of shared services across the federal government, the district is encouraged to enter into state and local intergovernmental agreements or inter-entity agreements where appropriate for procurement or use of common or shared goods and services. *2 C.F.R. 200.318(e)*

*Affirmative Steps*

The district must take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority businesses, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible. Affirmative steps must include:

1. Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;
2. Assuring that small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;
3. Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises;
4. Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises;



5. Using the services and assistance, as appropriate, of such organizations as the Small Business Administration and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and
6. Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (1) through (5) above.

*2 C.F.R. 200.321*

*Pre-procurement  
Review*

The district must make available upon request, for the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity pre-procurement review, procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, or independent cost estimates, when:

1. The district's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in 2 C.F.R. Part 200;
2. The procurement is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation;
3. The procurement, which is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, specifies a "brand name" product;
4. The proposed contract is more than the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or
5. A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the simplified acquisition threshold.

*2 C.F.R. 200.324(b)*

*Contract Cost  
and Price*

The district must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action in excess of the simplified acquisition threshold including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, the district must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals.

The district must negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration must be given to the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.



Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under the federal award are allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices would be allowable for the district under 2 C.F.R. Part 200, Subpart E—Cost Principles. The district may reference its own cost principles that comply with the federal cost principles.

The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting must not be used.

*2 C.F.R. 200.323*

*Contract Provisions*

The district's contracts must contain the applicable provisions described in 2 C.F.R. Part 200, Appendix II—Contract Provisions for non-Federal Entity Contracts Under Federal Awards. *2 C.F.R. 200.326*

*Suspension and Debarment*

Non-federal entities are subject to non-procurement debarment and suspension regulations at 2 C.F.R. Part 180. These regulations restrict awards, subawards, and contracts with certain parties that are debarred, suspended, or otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in federal assistance programs or activities. *2 C.F.R. 200.213*

*Remedies for Noncompliance*

If a district fails to comply with federal statutes, regulations, or the terms and conditions of a federal award, the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may impose additional conditions, as described in 2 C.F.R. 200.207 (Specific Conditions). If the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity determines that non-compliance cannot be remedied by imposing additional conditions, the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity may take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances:

1. Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the district or more severe enforcement action by the federal awarding agency or pass-through entity.
2. Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and any applicable matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance.
3. Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the federal award.
4. Initiate suspension or debarment proceedings as authorized under 2 C.F.R. Part 180 and federal awarding agency regulations (or in the case of a pass-through entity, recommend such a proceeding be initiated by a federal awarding agency).
5. Withhold further federal awards for the project or program.

6. Take other remedies that may be legally available.

*2 C.F.R. 200.338*

*Travel Costs*

Travel costs are the expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the district. Such costs may be charged on an actual cost basis, on a per diem or mileage basis in lieu of actual costs incurred, or on a combination of the two, provided the method used is applied to an entire trip and not to selected days of the trip, and results in charges consistent with those normally allowed in like circumstances in the district's non-federally funded activities and in accordance with the district's written travel reimbursement policies.

In the absence of an acceptable, written district policy regarding travel costs, the rates and amounts established under 5 U.S.C. 5701-11 (Travel and Subsistence Expenses; Mileage Allowances), or by the administrator of general services, or by the president (or his or her designee) pursuant to any provisions of such subchapter must apply to travel under federal awards (48 C.F.R. 31.205-46(a)).

*2 C.F.R. 200.474(a), (d)*

Direct Grant  
Programs

The regulations in 34 C.F.R. Part 75 apply to each direct grant program of the DOE. *34 C.F.R. 75.1*

State-Administered  
Programs

The regulations in 34 C.F.R. Part 76 apply to each state-administered program of the DOE. *34 C.F.R. 76.1*

General Education  
Provision Act

The regulations in 34 C.F.R. Part 81 govern the enforcement of legal requirements under applicable programs administered by the DOE and implement Part E of the General Education Provisions Act (GEPA). *34 C.F.R. 81.1*

---

<sup>1</sup> TEA EDGAR Materials and Resources:

[https://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Grants/EDGAR\\_Materials\\_and\\_Resources/](https://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Grants/EDGAR_Materials_and_Resources/)

<sup>2</sup> DOE EDGAR website:

<https://www2.ed.gov/policy/fund/reg/edgarReg/edgar.html>

<sup>3</sup> DOE Uniform Guidance website:

<https://www2.ed.gov/policy/fund/guid/uniform-guidance/index.html>

<sup>4</sup> DOE Uniform Guidance FAQs:

<https://www2.ed.gov/policy/fund/guid/uniform-guidance/edfaqs1216.pdf>

<sup>5</sup> OMB Memorandum M-18-18: <https://www.whitehouse.gov/wp-content/uploads/2018/06/M-18-18.pdf>

<sup>6</sup> TEA To the Administrator Addressed letter (August 28, 2018):

[https://tea.texas.gov/interiorpage\\_wide.aspx?id=51539625165](https://tea.texas.gov/interiorpage_wide.aspx?id=51539625165)

**Athletic Stadium  
Authority**

If the boards of two districts find that it is to the best interest of the districts to create an athletic stadium authority to include the districts, each board shall adopt a resolution creating an authority and designating the name by which it shall be known. An authority is a body politic and corporate. It must have a seal, may sue and be sued, and may make, amend, and repeal its bylaws. *Education Code 45.152*

An authority may construct, enlarge, furnish, and equip stadia, purchase existing stadia, furnishings, and equipment for its stadia, and operate and maintain stadia. A stadium need not be located inside a district creating the authority. *Education Code 45.154*

Board of Directors

An authority is governed by a board of directors consisting of seven members appointed in accordance with Education Code 45.153. *Education Code 45.153(a)*

Eminent Domain

For the purpose of carrying out any power conferred by Education Code Chapter 45, Subchapter F, an authority may acquire the fee simple title to land and other property and easements by condemnation in the manner provided by Property Code Chapter 21. An authority is a municipal corporation within the meaning of Property Code 21.021(c). The amount of and character or interest in land, other property, and easements to be acquired shall be determined by the athletic stadium authority board. *Education Code 45.161* [See CHG(LEGAL) at Eminent Domain.]

Revenue Bonds

An authority may issue revenue bonds to provide funds for any of its purposes. The bonds shall be payable from and secured by a pledge of all or any part of the revenue to be derived from the operation of the stadium and any other revenues resulting from the ownership of stadium properties. The bonds may be additionally secured by a mortgage or deed of trust on property of the authority.

The bonds must be authorized by resolution adopted by a majority vote of a quorum of the board of directors of the authority and shall be signed by the president or vice-president and countersigned by the secretary, or either or both of their facsimile signatures may be printed on the bonds. The seal of the authority shall be impressed or printed on the bonds. The bonds shall mature serially or otherwise in not more than 40 years.

*Education Code 45.155(a)–(c)*

Bonds issued under these provisions and the record relating to their issuance shall be submitted to the attorney general. *Education Code 45.157*

LOCAL REVENUE SOURCES  
ATHLETIC STADIUM AUTHORITY

CCE  
(LEGAL)

All bonds shall be issued in accordance with the Public Security Procedures Act. *Gov't Code Ch. 1201*

[For information regarding bonds generally, see CCA.]

Contracts with  
Districts

In accordance with Education Code 45.156, any district, acting by and through its board, may contract with any athletic stadium authority organized under these provisions for the use of any stadium owned by the authority. *Education Code 45.156(a)*

Charges for Use

The athletic stadium authority board shall charge sufficient rates for services rendered by the stadium and shall use other sources of its revenues so that revenues will be produced sufficient to pay all expenses in connection with the ownership, operation, and upkeep of the stadium; pay the interest on the bonds as it becomes due; create a sinking fund to pay the bonds as they become due; and create and maintain a bond reserve fund and other funds as provided in the bond resolution or trust indenture. *Education Code 45.158(a)*

**Tax Rate Adoption**

Maintenance Taxes

The board may levy, assess, and collect annual ad valorem taxes for the maintenance of the district's schools. Taxes may not be levied unless authorized by a majority of the qualified voters of the district, voting at an election called for that purpose. *Education Code 45.002, .003(a)*

*Maximum Tax Rate*

For any year, the maintenance tax rate per \$100 of taxable value adopted by the district may not exceed the rate equal to the sum of \$0.17 and the product of the state compression percentage, as determined under Education Code 42.2516, multiplied by \$1.50.

A rate that exceeds the maximum rate for the year in which the tax is to be imposed is void. A district with a tax rate that is void under this provision may, subject to requirements imposed by other law, adopt a rate for that year that does not exceed the specified maximum rate for that year.

Notwithstanding any other law, a district that levied a maintenance tax for the 2005 tax year at a rate greater than \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value in the district as permitted by special law may not levy a maintenance tax at a rate that exceeds the rate per \$100 of taxable value that is equal to the sum of \$0.17 and the product of the state compression percentage, as determined under Education Code 42.2516, multiplied by the rate of the maintenance tax levied by the district for the 2005 tax year.

*Education Code 45.003(d)–(f)*

Assessor and Collector

The board may employ a person to assess or collect the district's taxes and may compensate the person as the board considers appropriate. This provision does not prohibit a district from providing for the assessment or collection of the district's taxes under a method authorized by Tax Code Chapter 6, Subchapter B. *Education Code 45.231*

Certified Estimate of Values

By April 30, the chief appraiser shall prepare and certify to the district's assessor an estimate of the taxable value of district property. *Tax Code 26.01(e)*

Appraisal Roll

By July 25, the chief appraiser shall prepare and certify to the assessor for the district that part of the appraisal roll that lists the property taxable by the district. The part certified to the assessor is the appraisal roll for the district. *Tax Code 26.01(a)*

By August 1 or as soon thereafter as practicable, the district's assessor shall submit to the board the district's appraisal roll, showing the total appraised, assessed, and taxable values of all property and the total taxable value of new property.

By August 1 or as soon thereafter as practicable, a district's collector shall certify to the board an estimate of the collection rate for the current year. If the collector certified an anticipated collection rate in the preceding year and the actual collection rate in that year exceeded the anticipated rate, the collector shall also certify the amount of debt taxes collected in excess of the anticipated amount in the preceding year.

*Tax Code 26.04(b)*

*Reappraisal after  
Disaster*

The board of a district that is located partly or entirely inside an area declared to be a disaster area by the governor may authorize the reappraisal of all property damaged in the disaster at its market value immediately after the disaster. A district that authorizes a reappraisal pursuant to this provision must pay the appraisal district all the costs of making the appraisal.

If property damaged in a disaster is reappraised as provided by this provision, the board shall provide for prorating the taxes on the property as specified in Tax Code 23.02(d) for the year in which the disaster occurred.

*Tax Code 23.02; Att'y Gen. Op. KP-0192 (2018)*

Truth-in-Taxation  
Requirements

---

**Note:** The *Truth in Taxation* website maintained by the Texas comptroller of public accounts offers [detailed guidance on setting local property tax rates for school districts](#).<sup>1</sup>

---

*Traditional  
Method*

When the budget has been prepared under Education Code 44.002, the board president shall call a meeting of the board for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding tax year. The budget must be adopted before the adoption of the tax rate for the tax year in which the fiscal year covered by the budget begins. *Education Code 44.004(a), (g)* [See CE]

*Published Notice*

The board president shall provide for publication of notice of the budget and proposed tax rate meeting in a daily, weekly, or bi-weekly newspaper published in the district. If no daily, weekly, or biweekly newspaper is published in the district, the president shall provide for publication of notice in at least one newspaper of general circulation in the county in which the district's central administrative office is located. The notice shall be published not earlier than the 30th day or later than the tenth day before the date of the hearing.

Form of Notice

The notice of public meeting to discuss and adopt the budget and the proposed tax rate must comply with the size, format, and content requirements set out in Education Code 44.004.

A notice is not valid if it does not substantially conform to the language and format prescribed by the comptroller.

*Education Code 44.004(b)–(d)*

**Rate Decrease** If the published interest and sinking fund (debt service) rate decreases after the publication of the required notice, the president is not required to publish another notice or call another meeting to discuss and adopt the budget and the proposed lower tax rate. *Education Code 44.004(g-1)*

*Districts with July 1 Fiscal Year* Notwithstanding the provisions above, a district with a fiscal year beginning July 1 may use the certified estimate of the taxable value of district property in preparing the required notice if the district does not receive the certified appraisal roll on or before June 7. A district that uses a certified estimate may adopt a budget at the public meeting designated in the published notice prepared using the estimate, but the district may not adopt a tax rate before the district receives the certified appraisal roll for the district.

After receipt of the certified appraisal roll, a district must publish a revised notice and hold another public meeting before the district may adopt a tax rate that exceeds:

1. The rate proposed in the notice prepared using the estimate; or
2. The district's rollback rate determined under Tax Code 26.08 using the certified appraisal roll.

*Education Code 44.004(h), (i)*

*Early Adoption Method* Notwithstanding the provisions above or at Deadline below, a district may adopt a budget after the district adopts a tax rate for the tax year in which the fiscal year covered by the budget begins if the district elects to adopt a tax rate before receiving the certified appraisal roll for the district. If a district elects to adopt a tax rate before adopting a budget, the district must publish notice and hold a meeting for the purpose of discussing the proposed tax rate as provided above. Following adoption of the tax rate, the district must publish notice and hold another public meeting before the district may adopt a budget. The comptroller shall prescribe the language and format to be used in the notices. The district may use the certified estimate of taxable value in preparing a notice under this provision. *Education Code 44.004(j)*

The board of a district that elects to adopt a tax rate before the adoption of a budget for the fiscal year that begins in the current tax year may adopt a tax rate for the current tax year before receipt of the certified appraisal roll for the district if the chief appraiser of



the appraisal district in which the district participates has certified to the assessor for the district an estimate of the taxable value of property in the district as specified at Certified Estimate of Values above. If a district adopts a tax rate under this provision, the effective tax rate and the rollback tax rate of the district shall be calculated based on the certified estimate of taxable value. *Tax Code 26.05(g)*

Tax Rate Adoption  
Requirements

*Deadline*

Before the later of September 30 or the 60th day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received, the board shall adopt a tax rate for the current tax year and shall notify the assessor of the tax rate adopted. [See Adoption of Tax Roll below] The tax rate consists of two components, each of which must be approved separately. The components are:

1. The interest and sinking fund (debt service) rate calculated under Education Code 44.004(c)(5)(A)(ii)(b); and
2. The rate that, if applied to the total taxable value, will impose the amount of taxes needed to fund maintenance and operation expenditures of the district for the next year.

*Tax Code 26.05(a)*

Tax Date for  
Certain Districts

A district that before January 1, 1989, has for at least ten years followed a practice of adopting its tax rate at a different date than as provided by Tax Code Chapter 26 and of billing for and collecting its taxes at different dates than as provided by Chapters 31 and 33 may continue to follow that practice. This does not affect the dates provided by the Property Tax Code (Tax Code Title 1) for other purposes, including those relating to the appraisal and taxability of property, the attachment of tax liens and personal liability for taxes, and administrative and judicial review under Chapters 41 and 42. *Tax Code 26.135*

*Vote*

A board may not impose property taxes in any year until it has adopted a tax rate for that year, and the annual tax rate must be set by ordinance, resolution, or order. The vote on the ordinance, resolution, or order setting the tax rate must be separate from the vote adopting the budget. The vote on the ordinance, resolution, or order setting a tax rate that exceeds the sum of the district's effective maintenance and operations tax rate and the district's current debt rate must be a record vote, and at least 60 percent of the members of the board must vote in favor of the ordinance, resolution, or order.

*Motion*

A motion to adopt an ordinance, resolution, or order setting a tax rate that exceeds the effective tax rate must be made in the following form: "I move that the property tax rate be increased by the

adoption of a tax rate of (specify tax rate), which is effectively a (insert percentage by which the proposed tax rate exceeds the effective tax rate) percent increase in the tax rate.”

*Language and  
Internet Posting*

If the ordinance, resolution, or order sets a tax rate that, if applied to the total taxable value, will impose an amount of taxes to fund maintenance and operation expenditures of the district that exceeds the amount of taxes imposed for that purpose in the preceding year the district must:

1. Include in the ordinance, resolution, or order in type larger than the type used in any other portion of the document:
  - a. The following statement: “THIS TAX RATE WILL RAISE MORE TAXES FOR MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS THAN LAST YEAR’S TAX RATE”; and
  - b. If the tax rate exceeds the effective maintenance and operations rate, the following statement: “THE TAX RATE WILL EFFECTIVELY BE RAISED BY (INSERT PERCENTAGE BY WHICH THE TAX RATE EXCEEDS THE EFFECTIVE MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS RATE) PERCENT AND WILL RAISE TAXES FOR MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS ON A \$100,000 HOME BY APPROXIMATELY \$(Insert amount).”; and
2. Include on the home page of any internet website operated by the district:
  - a. The following statement: “(Insert name of unit) ADOPTED A TAX RATE THAT WILL RAISE MORE TAXES FOR MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS THAN LAST YEAR’S TAX RATE”; and
  - b. If the tax rate exceeds the effective maintenance and operations rate, the following statement: “THE TAX RATE WILL EFFECTIVELY BE RAISED BY (INSERT PERCENTAGE BY WHICH THE TAX RATE EXCEEDS THE EFFECTIVE MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS RATE) PERCENT AND WILL RAISE TAXES FOR MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS ON A \$100,000 HOME BY APPROXIMATELY \$(Insert amount).”

*Tax Code 26.05(b)*

Adoption of Tax Roll

On receipt of notice of the tax rate for the current tax year, the assessor for a district shall calculate the tax imposed on each property included on the appraisal roll for the district. The assessor shall enter the amount of tax in the appraisal roll and submit it to

the board for approval. The appraisal roll with amounts of tax entered as approved by the board constitutes the district's tax roll.  
*Tax Code 26.09(a), (e)*

Failure to Adopt Tax Rate

If the board does not adopt a tax rate before the date required at Deadline above, the tax rate for the district for that tax year is the lower of the effective tax rate calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the district for the preceding tax year. A tax rate established by this provision is treated as an adopted tax rate. Before the fifth day after the establishment of a tax rate by this provision, the board must ratify the applicable tax rate in the manner set out at Tax Rate Adoption Requirements above. *Tax Code 26.05(c)*

Taxpayer Injunction

A person who owns taxable property in a district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the district if the district has not complied with the requirements above at Published Notice, including Form of Notice, Districts with July 1 Fiscal Year, if applicable, and Tax Rate Adoption Requirements, and the failure to comply was not in good faith. An action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date a district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. *Education Code 44.004(e); Tax Code 26.05(e)*

Tax Information to County

A district shall provide to the county assessor-collector for each county in which all or part of district territory is located the district's adopted tax rate, maintenance and operations rate, debt rate, effective tax rate, effective maintenance and operations rate, and rollback tax rate for posting on the county's internet website. The district shall provide the information annually following the adoption of a tax rate by the district for the current tax year. *Tax Code 26.16(a)-(b)*

**Tax Ratification Election**

If the board adopts a tax rate that exceeds the district's rollback tax rate, the registered voters of the district at an election held for that purpose must determine whether to approve the adopted tax rate.

If for the preceding tax year a district adopted a maintenance and operations tax rate that was less than the district's effective maintenance and operations tax rate for that preceding tax year, the rollback tax rate of the district for the current tax year is calculated as if the district adopted a maintenance and operations tax rate for the preceding tax year that was equal to the district's effective maintenance and operations tax rate for that preceding tax year.

*Tax Code 26.08(a), (n), (p); see Att'y Gen. Op. KP-0154 (2017) (addressing calculation of the rollback rate and when a district must hold a tax ratification election)*

Disaster Exception

When increased expenditure of money by a district is necessary to respond to a disaster, including a tornado, hurricane, flood, or

	<p>other calamity, but not including a drought, that has impacted a district and the governor has requested federal disaster assistance for the area in which the district is located, an election is not required to approve the tax rate adopted by the board for the year following the year in which the disaster occurs. <i>Tax Code 26.08(a)</i></p>
Time for Election	<p>The board shall order that the election be held in the district on a date not less than 30 or more than 90 days after the day on which it adopted the tax rate. Election Code 41.001 (regarding uniform election dates) does not apply to the election unless a uniform election date falls within the time permitted by this provision. <i>Tax Code 26.08(b)</i></p>
Call for Election	<p>Except as provided at Uniform Election Date below, an election shall be ordered not later than the 62nd day before election day.</p>
Uniform Election Date	<p>For an election to be held on a uniform election date, the election shall be ordered not later than the 78th day before election day.</p> <p>An election to ratify a tax rate adopted by a board under the early adoption method described above shall be ordered not later than the 30th day before election day.</p> <p><i>Election Code 3.005 [See BBBA]</i></p>
Notice to County Clerk	<p>The board shall deliver notice of the election to the county clerk and voter registrar of each county in which the district is located not later than the 60th day before election day.</p>
Exception	<p>A board that orders an election to ratify a tax rate adopted by the board under the early adoption method described above shall deliver notice of the election to the county clerk of each county in which the district is located not later than the 30th day before election day.</p> <p><i>Election Code 4.008</i></p>
Proposition	<p>At the election, the ballots shall be prepared to permit voting for or against the proposition: "Approving the ad valorem tax rate of \$_____ per \$100 valuation in (name of school district) for the current year, a rate that is \$_____ higher per \$100 valuation than the school district rollback tax rate, for the purpose of (description of purpose of increase)." The ballot proposition must include the adopted tax rate and the difference between that rate and the rollback tax rate in the appropriate places. <i>Tax Code 26.08(b)</i></p> <p>In addition to any other requirement imposed by law for a proposition, including a provision prescribing the proposition language, a proposition submitted to the voters for approval of the imposition or increase of a tax shall specifically state the amount of or maximum</p>

tax rate of the tax or tax increase for which approval is sought.  
*Election Code 52.072(e)(2)*

Each proposition on the ballot must identify the name of the authority ordering the election on the measure. *Election Code 52.095(c)*

Election Outcome

If a majority of the votes cast in an election favor the proposition, the tax rate for the current year is the rate that was adopted by the board. If the proposition is not approved, a board may not adopt a tax rate for the current year that exceeds the district's rollback tax rate. *Tax Code 26.08(c)-(d)*

---

<sup>1</sup> Truth-in-Taxation: Tax Rate Adoption: <https://comptroller.texas.gov/taxes/property-tax/truth-in-taxation/index.php>

**Exemptions**

Definitions

*“Disabled”*

“Disabled” means under a disability for purposes of payment of disability insurance benefits under Federal Old-Age, Survivors, and Disability Insurance. *Tax Code 11.13(m)(1)*

*“Disabled Veteran”*

“Disabled veteran” means a veteran of the armed services of the United States who is classified as disabled by the Veterans’ Administration or its successor or the branch of the armed services in which the veteran served and whose disability is service-connected. *Tax Code 11.22(h)(3)*

*“First Responder”*

“First responder” means an individual listed under Government Code 615.003. *Tax Code 11.134(a)(1)*

*“Residence Homestead”*

“Residence homestead” means a structure (including a mobile home) or a separately secured and occupied portion of a structure (together with the land, not to exceed 20 acres, and improvements used in the residential occupancy of the structure, if the structure and the land and improvements have identical ownership) that is:

1. Owned by one or more individuals, either directly or through a beneficial interest in a qualifying trust;
2. Designed or adapted for human residence;
3. Used as a residence; and
4. Occupied as the individual’s principal residence by an owner, by an owner’s surviving spouse who has a life estate in the property, or, for property owned through a beneficial interest in a qualifying trust, by a trustor or beneficiary of the trust who qualifies for the exemption.

*Tax Code 11.13(j)*

Homestead Exemptions

*Mandatory*

An adult is entitled to exemption from taxation by a district of \$25,000 of the appraised value of the adult’s residence homestead, except that only \$5,000 of the exemption applies to an entity operating under former Education Code Chapters 17, 18, 25, 26, 27, or 28, as those chapters existed on May 1, 1995, as permitted by Education Code 11.301. To receive the residence homestead exemption, the person claiming the exemption must apply for the exemption. *Tax Code 11.13(b), .43*

*Persons 65 or Older or Disabled*

In addition to the mandatory exemption above, an adult who is disabled or 65 or older is entitled to an exemption of \$10,000 of the appraised value of his or her residence homestead. *Tax Code 11.13(c)*

Tax Limitation

A district may not increase the total annual amount of ad valorem tax it imposes on the residence homestead of an individual 65

	<p>years of age or older, or on the residence homestead of an individual who is disabled as defined by Tax Code 11.13, above the amount of the tax it imposed in the first tax year in which the individual qualified that residence homestead for an applicable exemption. <i>Tax Code 11.26(a)</i></p>
Improvements	<p>If an individual subject to a tax limitation makes improvements to the individual's residence homestead, other than improvements required to comply with governmental requirements or repairs, the district may increase the tax on the homestead in the first year the value of the homestead is increased on the appraisal roll because of the enhancement of value by the improvements. A limitation then applies to the increased amount of tax until more improvements, if any, are made. <i>Tax Code 11.26(b)</i></p>
<i>Exception</i>	<p>An improvement to property that would otherwise constitute an improvement discussed above is not treated as an improvement if it is a replacement structure for a structure that was rendered uninhabitable or unusable by a casualty or by wind or water damage. For purposes of appraising the property in the tax year in which the structure would have constituted an improvement, the replacement structure is considered to be an improvement only if the square footage of the replacement structure exceeds that of the replaced structure as that structure existed before the casualty or damage occurred or the exterior of the replacement structure is of higher quality construction and composition than that of the replaced structure. <i>Tax Code 11.26(o)</i></p>
Portability of Tax Limitation	<p>If an individual who receives a tax limitation, including a surviving spouse, discussed below, subsequently qualifies a different residence homestead for the same exemption, a district may not impose ad valorem taxes on the subsequently qualified homestead in a year in an amount that exceeds the amount of taxes calculated in accordance with Tax Code 11.26(g). <i>Tax Code 11.26(g)</i></p>
Surviving Spouse of Persons 65 or Older	<p>If an individual who qualifies for the exemption for an individual 65 years of age or older dies, the surviving spouse of the individual is entitled to the limitation applicable to the residence homestead of the individual if the surviving spouse is 55 years of age or older when the individual dies, and the residence homestead of the individual is the residence homestead of the surviving spouse on the date that the individual dies and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse. <i>Tax Code 11.26(i)</i></p>
<i>Local Options</i> All Taxpayers	<p>In addition to other residence homestead exemptions in Tax Code 11.13, an individual is entitled to an exemption from taxation by a district of a percentage of the appraised value of his or her residence homestead if the exemption is adopted by the board before July 1 in the manner provided by law for official action by the</p>



board. If the percentage set by the district produces an exemption in a tax year of less than \$5,000 when applied to a particular residence homestead, the individual is entitled to an exemption of \$5,000 of the appraised value. The percentage adopted by the district may not exceed 20 percent. *Tax Code 11.13(n)*

Disabled or 65  
or Older

An individual who is disabled or is 65 or older is entitled to an exemption from taxation by a district of a portion of the appraised value of his or her residence homestead if the exemption is adopted either by the board or by a favorable vote of a majority of the qualified voters of the district at an election called by the board, and the board shall call the election on the petition of at least 20 percent of the number of qualified voters who voted in the preceding election of the district.

*Amount*

The amount of an exemption adopted as provided at Disabled or 65 or Older is \$3,000 of the appraised value of the residence homestead unless a larger amount is specified by the board if the board authorizes the exemption or the petition for the election if the exemption is authorized through an election. Once authorized, an exemption adopted may be repealed or decreased or increased in amount by the board or by the petition and election procedure. In the case of a decrease, the amount of the exemption may not be reduced to less than \$3,000 of the market value.

*Tax Code 11.13(d)–(f)*

*Continuation of  
Exemption during  
Construction*

If a qualified residential structure for which the owner receives a homestead exemption under Tax Code 11.13 is rendered uninhabitable or unusable by a casualty or by wind or water damage, the owner may continue to receive the exemption for the structure and the land and improvements used in the residential occupancy of the structure while the owner constructs a replacement qualified residential structure on the land in accordance with Tax Code 11.135. *Tax Code 11.135, .26(n); 34 TAC 9.416*

*Surviving Spouse  
of First  
Responder*

The surviving spouse of a first responder who is killed or fatally injured in the line of duty is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the surviving spouse's residence homestead if the surviving spouse:

1. Is an eligible survivor for purposes of Government Code Chapter 615 as determined by the Employees Retirement System of Texas; and
2. Has not remarried since the first responder's death.

This exemption applies regardless of the date of the first responder's death if the surviving spouse otherwise meets the qualifications above.

A surviving spouse who receives an exemption for a residence homestead is entitled to receive an exemption from taxation of a property that the surviving spouse subsequently qualifies as the surviving spouse's residence homestead in an amount equal to the dollar amount of the exemption from taxation of the first property for which the surviving spouse received the exemption in the last year in which the surviving spouse received that exemption if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the death of the first responder.

*Tax Code 11.134*

Veteran Exemptions  
*100 Percent  
Disabled*

A disabled veteran who receives from the U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100 percent disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100 percent disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. *Tax Code 11.131(b)*

*Partially Disabled  
with Donated  
Residence*

A disabled veteran who has a disability rating of less than 100 percent is entitled to an exemption from taxation of a percentage of the appraised value of the disabled veteran's residence homestead equal to the disabled veteran's disability rating if the residence homestead was donated to the disabled veteran by a charitable organization at no cost to the disabled veteran, or at some cost to the disabled veteran in the form of a cash payment, a mortgage, or both in an aggregate amount that is not more than 50 percent of the good faith estimate of the market value of the residence homestead made by the charitable organization as of the date of the donation. *Tax Code 11.132(b)*

*Exemption for  
Surviving Spouse*

The surviving spouse of a 100 percent disabled veteran who qualified for an exemption when the veteran died, of a disabled veteran who would have qualified for an exemption if it had been in effect on the date the veteran died, or of a disabled veteran who qualified for a residence homestead exemption of a percentage of appraised value is entitled to the same exemption from taxation of the same property to which the disabled veteran's exemption applied or would have applied if:

1. The surviving spouse has not remarried since the death of the disabled veteran; and
2. The property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the disabled veteran died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse.

If a surviving spouse who qualifies for an exemption subsequently qualifies a different property as the surviving spouse's residence

homestead, the surviving spouse is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the subsequently qualified homestead in an amount equal to the dollar amount of the exemption of the former homestead in the last year in which the surviving spouse received an exemption for that homestead if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the death of the disabled veteran.

*Tax Code 11.131(c)–(d), .132(c)–(d)*

*Surviving Spouse  
of Individual  
Killed in Action*

The surviving spouse of a member of the armed services of the United States who is killed in action is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the surviving spouse's residence homestead if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the death of the member of the armed services. A surviving spouse who receives an exemption for a residence homestead is entitled to receive an exemption from taxation of a property that the surviving spouse subsequently qualifies as the surviving spouse's residence homestead in an amount equal to the dollar amount of the exemption from taxation of the first property for which the surviving spouse received the exemption in the last year in which the surviving spouse received that exemption if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the death of the member of the armed services. *Tax Code 11.133*

*Tex. Const. Art. VIII, Sec. 1-b*

*Disabled Veteran*

A disabled veteran is entitled to an exemption from taxation of a portion of the assessed value of a property the veteran owns and designates under Tax Code 11.22(f). *Tax Code 11.22*

Optional  
Exemptions

Among others, a board may grant additional tax exemptions in accordance with applicable law for:

1. Residential property owned by the United States or an agency of the United States and used to provide transitional housing for the indigent under a program operated or directed by the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development. *Tax Code 11.111*
2. Land and housing units on the land owned by a community land trust. *Tax Code 11.1827*
3. Certain historic structures or archeological sites and the land necessary to access and use the structure or archeological site. *Tax Code 11.24*
4. Property on which approved water conservation initiatives, desalination projects, or brush control initiatives have been implemented. *Tax Code 11.32*

If a district adopts, amends, or repeals an exemption that the district by law has the option to adopt or not, the district shall notify

the appraisal office of its action and of the terms of the exemption within 30 days after the date of its action. *Tax Code 6.08*

Goods-in-Transit

A person is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the appraised value of that portion of the person's property that consists of goods-in-transit, as defined in Tax Code 11.253(a)(2).

A board, by official action, may provide for the taxation of goods-in-transit exempt under Tax Code 11.253(b) and not exempt under other law. The official action to tax the goods-in-transit must be taken before January 1 of the first tax year in which the board proposes to tax goods-in-transit. Before acting to tax the exempt property, a board must conduct a public hearing as required by Texas Constitution Article VIII, Section 1-n(d). If the board provides for the taxation of the goods-in-transit as provided by this provision, the exemption stated above does not apply to that district. The goods-in-transit remain subject to taxation by the district until the board, by official action, rescinds or repeals its previous action to tax goods-in-transit, or otherwise determines that the exemption will apply to that district.

Notwithstanding official action that was taken before October 1, 2011, to tax goods-in-transit, a district may not tax such goods-in-transit in a tax year that begins on or after January 1, 2012, unless the board takes official action on or after October 1, 2011, to provide for the taxation of the goods-in-transit.

*Exception*

If a board, before October 1, 2011, took action to provide for the taxation of goods-in-transit and pledged the taxes imposed on the goods-in-transit for the payment of a debt of the district, the district tax officials may continue to impose the taxes against the goods-in-transit until the debt is discharged, if cessation of the imposition would impair the obligation of the contract by which the debt was created.

*Tax Code 11.253(b), (j)–(j-2)*

**Payment Options**

Discounts

The board may adopt, by official action, one or both of the discount options below. *Tax Code 31.05(a)*

*Option 1*

A district may adopt the following discounts to apply regardless of the date on which the district mails its tax bills:

1. Three percent if the tax is paid in October or earlier.
2. Two percent if the tax is paid in November.
3. One percent if the tax is paid in December.

*Tax Code 31.05(b)*

This discount does not apply to taxes that are calculated too late for it to be available. *Tax Code 31.04(c)*

*Option 2*

A district may adopt the following discounts to apply when the district mails its tax bills after September 30:

1. Three percent if the tax is paid before or during the next full calendar month following the date on which the tax bills were mailed.
2. Two percent if the tax is paid during the second full calendar month following the date on which the tax bills were mailed.
3. One percent if the tax is paid during the third full calendar month following the date on which the tax bills were mailed.

*Tax Code 31.05(c)*

*Both Options*

If a board adopts both discounts, the discounts described at Option 1 apply unless the tax bills for the district are mailed after September 30, in which case only the discounts described at Option 2 apply. *Tax Code 31.05(a)*

*Rescission*

The board may rescind a discount lawfully adopted by the board. The rescission of a discount takes effect in the tax year following the year in which the discount is rescinded. *Tax Code 31.05(d)*

Split Payments

A board that collects its own taxes may provide, by official action, that a person who pays one-half of the district's taxes before December 1 may pay the remaining one-half of the taxes without penalty or interest at any time before July 1 of the following year. This payment option does not apply to taxes that are calculated too late for it to be available. *Tax Code 31.03, .04(c)*

*In Certain  
Counties*

The board of a district located in a county having a population of not less than 285,000 and not more than 300,000 that borders a county having a population of 3.3 million or more and the Gulf of Mexico that has its taxes collected by another taxing unit that has adopted the split-payment option may provide, by official action, that the split-payment option does not apply to the district's taxes collected by the other taxing unit. *Tax Code 31.03(d)*

Performing Services  
in Lieu of Paying  
Taxes

The board by resolution may permit certain individuals or business entities to perform certain services for the district in lieu of paying the district property taxes. While performing services for a district, the individual is not an employee of the district and is not entitled to any benefit, including workers' compensation coverage, that the district provides to its employees. *Tax Code 31.035, .036, .037*

AD VALOREM TAXES  
EXEMPTIONS AND PAYMENTS

CCGA  
(LEGAL)

<i>Persons 65 and Over</i>	Subject to the requirements of Tax Code 31.035, the board by order or resolution may permit an individual who is at least 65 years of age to perform service for the district in lieu of paying taxes imposed by a district on property owned by the individual and occupied as the individual's residence homestead. Property owners performing services for a district under this provision may only supplement or complement the regular personnel of the district. A district may not reduce the number of persons the district employs or reduce the number of hours to be worked by employees of the district because the district permits property owners to perform services for the district under this provision. <i>Tax Code 31.035(a), (g)</i>
<i>Teaching Services</i>	An individual is qualified to perform teaching services for a district under the provisions below only if the individual holds a baccalaureate or more advanced degree in a field related to each course to be taught and: <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Is certified as a classroom teacher under Education Code Chapter 21, Subchapter B; or</li><li>2. Obtains a school district teaching permit under Education Code 21.055.</li></ol> <i>Tax Code 31.036(h), .037(i)</i>
By Individual	Subject to the requirements of Tax Code 31.036, the board by resolution may permit qualified individuals to perform teaching services for the district at a junior high school or high school of the district in lieu of paying taxes imposed by the district on property owned and occupied by the individual as a residence homestead. <i>Tax Code 31.036</i>
By Employee of Business Entity	Subject to the requirements of Tax Code 31.037, a board by resolution may authorize a corporation or other business entity to permit a qualified individual employed by the business entity to perform teaching services in a high school or a junior high school for the district in lieu of paying taxes imposed by the district on property owned by the business entity. <i>Tax Code 31.037</i>
Installment Payments <i>Certain Homesteads</i>	An individual who is disabled or at least 65 years of age and qualified for a homestead exemption under Tax Code 11.13(c), or an individual who is a disabled veteran or the unmarried surviving spouse of a disabled veteran and qualified for an exemption under Tax Code 11.132 or 11.22, may pay district taxes imposed on the person's residence homestead property in four equal installments without penalty or interest if paid by the applicable dates set out in Tax Code 31.031. <i>Tax Code 31.031</i>
<i>Disaster Area</i>	A person may pay district taxes imposed on certain property the person owns in four equal installments without penalty or interest if



paid by the applicable dates set out in Tax Code 31.032. This option applies to:

1. Real property that is located in a disaster area; has been damaged as a direct result of the disaster; and is:
  - a. The residence homestead of the owner or consists of property that is used for residential purposes and that has fewer than five living units; or
  - b. Owned or leased by a business entity that had not more than the amount calculated as provided by Tax Code 31.032(h) in gross receipts in the entity's most recent federal tax year or state franchise tax annual period, according to the applicable federal income tax return or state franchise tax report of the entity;
2. Tangible personal property that is owned or leased by a business entity described above at 1b; and
3. Taxes that are imposed on the property by a district before the first anniversary of the disaster.

*Tax Code 31.032(a)–(d)*

Definitions

“Disaster” means the occurrence or imminent threat of widespread or severe damage, injury, or loss of life or property resulting from any natural or man-made cause, including fire, flood, earthquake, wind, storm, wave action, oil spill or other water contamination, volcanic activity, epidemic, air contamination, blight, drought, infestation, explosion, riot, hostile military or paramilitary action, extreme heat, other public calamity requiring emergency action, or energy emergency. *Gov't Code 418.004(1)*

“Disaster area” means an area declared a disaster area by the governor under Government Code Chapter 418; or an area declared a disaster area by the president of the United States under 42 U.S.C. Section 5141. *Tax Code 151.350*

*Tax Code 31.032(g)*

**Delinquent Taxes**

Delinquency Date

Except as provided by Tax Code 31.02(b) (regarding payment by certain eligible persons on active duty in the armed forces), 31.03 (regarding split payments), and 31.04 (regarding postponement of delinquency date based on mailing date of tax bills), taxes are due on receipt of the tax bill and are delinquent if not paid before February 1 of the year following the year in which imposed. *Tax Code 31.02*



---

**Note:** Delinquent taxes incur penalties and accrue interest in accordance with Tax Code 33.01, subject to any waiver by the board pursuant to Tax Code 33.011.

---

Delinquent Tax  
Collection

A board may contract with any competent attorney to represent the district to enforce the collection of delinquent taxes. The attorney's compensation is set in the contract, but the total amount of compensation provided may not exceed 20 percent of the amount of delinquent tax, penalty, and interest collected. *Tax Code 6.30(c)*

Additional Penalties

The board may provide, by official action, that taxes that become delinquent at a certain time incur an additional penalty to defray costs of collection if the board has contracted with an attorney as provided above. *Tax Code 33.07, .08*

**Discounts**

Discount options shall not be provided for the early payment of property taxes in the District.

**Split Payments**

Split payment of taxes shall be allowed in accordance with statutory provisions.

**Tax Increment  
Financing Act**

Board of Directors

Except as provided at Large Municipality below, each district that levies taxes on real property in a reinvestment zone designated by a county or municipality in accordance with the Tax Increment Financing Act, Tax Code Chapter 311, may appoint one member of the reinvestment zone board of directors if the district has approved the payment of all or part of the tax increment produced by the district into the tax increment fund for the zone. A district may waive its right to appoint a director. *Tax Code 311.009(a), (b)*

*Large  
Municipality*

In a reinvestment zone designated by a municipality which is wholly or partially located in a county with a population of less than 1.8 million in which the principal municipality has a population of 1.1 million or more, each taxing unit that approves the payment of all or part of its tax increment into the tax increment fund is entitled to appoint a number of members to the board in proportion to the taxing unit's pro rata share of the total anticipated tax increment to be deposited into the tax increment fund during the term of the zone. *Tax Code 311.0091(a)–(c)*

Tax Increments  
*Amount*

The amount of a district's tax increment for a year is the amount of property taxes levied and assessed by the district for that year on the captured appraised value of real property taxable by the district and located in a reinvestment zone or the amount of property taxes levied and collected by the district for that year on the captured appraised value of real property taxable by the district and located in a reinvestment zone. The board of the district shall determine which of the methods is used to calculate the amount of the district's tax increment.

"Captured  
Appraised  
Value"

The captured appraised value of real property taxable by a district for a year is the total taxable value of all real property taxable by the district and located in a reinvestment zone for that year less the tax increment base of the district.

"Tax Increment  
Base"

The tax increment base of a district is the total taxable value of all real property taxable by the district and located in a reinvestment zone for the year in which the zone was designated under Tax Code Chapter 311.

*Tax Code 311.012*

*Collection and  
Deposit*

Each district that taxes real property located in a reinvestment zone shall provide for the collection of its taxes in the zone as for any other property taxed by the district. Each district shall pay into the tax increment fund for the zone an amount equal to the tax increment produced by the district, less the sum of:

1. Property taxes produced from the tax increments that are, by contract executed before the designation of the area as a re-investment zone, required to be paid by the district to another political subdivision; and
2. A portion, not to exceed 15 percent, of the tax increment produced by the district as provided by the reinvestment zone financing plan or a larger portion as provided at Agreement Required below.

*Tax Code 311.013(a)–(b)*

Notwithstanding any termination of the reinvestment zone and unless otherwise specified by an agreement between the district and the municipality or county that created the zone, a district shall make the required payment not later than the 90th day after the later of the delinquency date for district property taxes or the date the municipality or county that created the zone submits to the district an invoice specifying the tax increment produced by the district and the amount the district is required to pay into the tax increment fund for the zone. A district is not required to pay into a tax increment fund the applicable portion of a tax increment attributable to delinquent taxes until those taxes are collected. *Tax Code 311.013(c), (i)*

A district whose taxable value is reduced under Government Code 403.302(d)(4) (determination of district property values by the comptroller) shall pay into the tax increment fund, in addition to the amount otherwise required to be paid, an amount equal to the amount by which the amount of taxes the district would have been required to pay into the fund in the current year if the district levied taxes at the rate the district levied in 2005 exceeds the amount the district is otherwise required to pay into the fund in the year of the reduction. This additional amount may not exceed the amount the district receives in state aid for the current tax year under Education Code 42.2514 (additional state aid for tax increment financing payments). The district shall pay the additional amount after the district receives the state aid to which the district is entitled for the current tax year under Education Code 42.2514. *Tax Code 311.013(n)*

*Agreement  
Required*

A district is not required to pay into the tax increment fund any of its tax increment produced from property located in a reinvestment zone designated under Tax Code 311.005(a) or in an area added to a reinvestment zone under Tax Code 311.007 unless the district enters into an agreement to do so with the governing body of the municipality or county that designated the zone. *Tax Code 311.013(f)*

A district that participates in a zone is not required to increase the percentage or amount of the tax increment to be contributed by the district because of an amendment to the project plan or reinvestment zone financing plan for the zone unless the board by official action approves the amendment. *Tax Code 311.011(g)*

A district is not required to pay into the tax increment fund any of its tax increment produced from property located in an area added to the reinvestment zone under Tax Code 311.007(a) or (b) unless the board enters into an agreement to do so with the governing body of the municipality or county that created the zone. *Tax Code 311.013(k)*

If the governing body of the municipality or county that designated a reinvestment zone extends the term of all or a portion of the zone, a district is not required to participate in the zone or portion of the zone for the extended term unless the district enters into a written agreement to do so. *Tax Code 311.007(c)*

Notwithstanding the designation of a later termination date under Tax Code 311.017(a), a district that taxes real property located in the reinvestment zone is not required to pay any of its tax increment into the tax increment fund for the zone after the termination date designated in the ordinance or order creating the zone unless the board enters into an agreement to do so with the governing body of the municipality or county that created the zone. *Tax Code 311.017(a-1)*

**Property  
Redevelopment and  
Tax Abatement Act**

On or after September 1, 2001, a school district may not enter into a tax abatement agreement under Tax Code Chapter 312. *Tax Code 312.002(f)*

**Reinvestment Zone  
for Chapter 313**

Notwithstanding any other provision of Tax Code Chapter 312 to the contrary, the board, in the manner required for official action and for purposes of Tax Code Chapter 313, Subchapter B or C [see Texas Economic Development Act below], may designate an area entirely within the territory of the district as a reinvestment zone if the board finds that, as a result of the designation and the granting of a limitation on appraised value, for property located in the reinvestment zone, the designation is reasonably likely to:

1. Contribute to the expansion of primary employment in the reinvestment zone; or
2. Attract major investment in the reinvestment zone that would:
  - a. Be a benefit to property in the reinvestment zone and to the district; and

- b. Contribute to the economic development of the region of this state in which the district is located.

The board may seek the recommendation of the commissioners court of each county and the governing body of each municipality that has territory in the district before designating an area as a reinvestment zone.

*Tax Code 312.0025*

**Texas Economic Development Act**

In implementing the Texas Economic Development Act, Tax Code Chapter 313, districts should strictly interpret the criteria and selection guidelines provided by Chapter 313 and approve only those applications for an ad valorem tax benefit that:

1. Enhance the local community;
2. Improve the local public education system;
3. Create high-paying jobs; and
4. Advance the economic development goals of Texas.

*Tax Code 313.004(3)*

Definitions

*“Agreement”*

“Agreement” means the written agreement between the board and the approved applicant on the form adopted by reference in 34 Administrative Code 9.1052 (relating to Forms) to implement a limitation on the appraised value for district maintenance and operations ad valorem property tax purposes on an entity’s qualified property, required by Tax Code 313.027(d).

*“Agreement Holder”*

“Agreement holder” means an entity that has executed an agreement with a district.

*“Applicant”*

“Applicant” means an entity that has applied for a limitation on appraised value for district maintenance and operations ad valorem property tax purposes on the entity’s property, as provided by Tax Code Chapter 313.

*“Application”*

“Application” means an application for limitation of appraised value for district maintenance and operations ad valorem property tax purposes on an entity’s qualified property on the form adopted by reference in 34 Administrative Code 9.1052 (relating to Forms), the schedules attached thereto, and the documentation submitted by an entity for the purpose of obtaining an agreement for a limitation on appraised value from a district.

*“Application Review Start Date”*

“Application review start date” means the later date of either the date on which the district issues its written notice that an applicant has submitted a completed application or the date on which the

comptroller issues its written notice that an applicant has submitted a completed application.

*“Completed Application”*

“Completed application” means an application in the form and number and containing all the information required pursuant to 34 Administrative Code 9.1053 (relating to Entity Requesting Agreement to Limit Appraised Value), that has been determined by the district and the comptroller to include all minimum requirements for consideration.

*“Entity”*

“Entity” means any entity upon which a tax is imposed by Tax Code 171.001, including a combined group as defined by Tax Code 171.0001(7) or members of a combined group, provided, however, an entity does not include a sole proprietorship, partnership, or limited liability partnership.

*34 TAC 9.1051(1), (2), (3), (7), (10), (12), (20)*

*“Qualified Investment”*

“Qualified investment” means:

1. Tangible personal property that is first placed in service in this state during the applicable qualifying time period that begins on or after January 1, 2002, without regard to whether the property is affixed to or incorporated into real property, and that is:
  - a. Described as Section 1245 property by Section 1245(a), Internal Revenue Code of 1986;
  - b. Used in connection with the manufacturing, processing, or fabrication in a cleanroom environment of a semiconductor product, without regard to whether the property is actually located in the cleanroom environment, including integrated systems, fixtures, and piping; all property necessary or adapted to reduce contamination or to control airflow, temperature, humidity, chemical purity, or other environmental conditions or manufacturing tolerances; and production equipment and machinery, moveable cleanroom partitions, and cleanroom lighting;
  - c. Used in connection with the operation of a nuclear electric power generation facility, including property, including pressure vessels, pumps, turbines, generators, and condensers, used to produce nuclear electric power; and property and systems necessary to control radioactive contamination;
  - d. Used in connection with operating an integrated gasification combined cycle electric generation facility, including property used to produce electric power by means of a



combined combustion turbine and steam turbine application using synthetic gas or another product produced by the gasification of coal or another carbon-based feedstock; or property used in handling materials to be used as feedstock for gasification or used in the gasification process to produce synthetic gas or another carbon-based feedstock for use in the production of electric power in the manner described herein;

- e. Used in connection with operating an advanced clean energy project, as defined by Health and Safety Code 382.003; or
2. A building or a permanent, nonremovable component of a building that is built or constructed during the applicable qualifying time period that begins on or after January 1, 2002, and that houses tangible personal property described by items 1a–e above.

*Tax Code 313.021(1)*

*“Qualified Property”*

“Qualified property” means:

- 1. Land:
  - a. That is located in an area designated as a reinvestment zone under Tax Code Chapter 311 or 312 or as an enterprise zone under Government Code Chapter 2303;
  - b. On which a person proposes to construct a new building or erect or affix a new improvement that does not exist before the date the person submits a complete application for a limitation on appraised value under Tax Code Chapter 313, Subchapter B;
  - c. That is not subject to a tax abatement agreement entered into by a district under Tax Code Chapter 312; and
  - d. On which, in connection with the new building or new improvement described by item 1b above, the owner or lessee of, or the holder of another possessory interest in, the land proposes to:
    - (1) Make a qualified investment in an amount equal to at least the minimum amount required by Tax Code 313.023; and
    - (2) Create at least 25 new qualifying jobs, except as provided at Exception below;

2. The new building or other new improvement described by item 1b above; and
3. Tangible personal property:
  - a. That is not subject to a tax abatement agreement entered into by a district under Tax Code Chapter 312;
  - b. For which a sales and use tax refund is not claimed under Tax Code 151.3186; and
  - c. Except for new equipment described in Tax Code 151.318(q) or (q-1), that is first placed in service in the new building, in the newly expanded building, or in or on the new improvement described by item 1b above, or on the land on which that new building or new improvement is located, if the personal property is ancillary and necessary to the business conducted in that new building or in or on that new improvement.

*Tax Code 313.021(2); see also 34 TAC 9.1051(16) (additional requirements for "Qualified Property")*

*Exception*

For purposes of Tax Code Chapter 313, Subchapter C, applicable to certain rural districts, a property owner is required to create at least 10 qualifying jobs. *Tax Code 313.051(b)*

*"Qualifying Job"*

"Qualifying job" means a permanent full-time job that:

1. Requires at least 1,600 hours of work a year;
2. Is not transferred from one area in this state to another area in this state;
3. Is not created to replace a previous employee;
4. Is covered by a group health benefit plan for which the business offers to pay at least 80 percent of the premiums or other charges assessed for employee-only coverage under the plan, regardless of whether an employee may voluntarily waive the coverage; and
5. Pays at least 110 percent of the county average weekly wage for manufacturing jobs in the county where the job is located.

*Tax Code 313.021(3); 34 TAC 9.1051(30)*

To be eligible for a limitation on appraised value under Tax Code Chapter 313, the property owner must create the required number of new qualifying jobs and the average weekly wage for all jobs

created that are not qualifying jobs must exceed the county average weekly wage for all jobs in the county where the jobs are located. *Tax Code 313.024(d)*

Waiver of New  
Jobs Creation  
Requirement

Notwithstanding any other provision of Tax Code Chapter 313 to the contrary, the board may waive the new jobs creation requirement and approve an application if the board makes a finding that the jobs creation requirement exceeds the industry standard for the number of employees reasonably necessary for the operation of the facility of the property owner that is described in the application. *Tax Code 313.025(f-1)*

“Qualifying Time  
Period”

“Qualifying time period” means:

1. The period that begins on the date that a person’s application for a limitation on appraised value under Tax Code Chapter 313 is approved by the board and ends on December 31 of the second tax year that begins after that date, except as provided by items 2 and 3 below or Tax Code 313.027(h);
2. In connection with a nuclear electric power generation facility, the first seven tax years that begin on or after the third anniversary of the date the district approves the property owner’s application for a limitation on appraised value, unless a shorter time period is agreed to by the board and the property owner; or
3. In connection with an advanced clean energy project, the first five tax years that begin on or after the third anniversary of the date the district approves the property owner’s application for a limitation on appraised value, unless a shorter time period is agreed to by the board and the property owner.

*Tax Code 313.021(4)*

“Substantive  
Document”

“Substantive document” means a document or other information or data in electronic media determined by the comptroller to substantially involve or include information or data significant to an application, the evaluation or consideration of an application, or the agreement or implementation of an agreement for limitation of appraised value pursuant to Tax Code Chapter 313. The term includes, but is not limited to, any application requesting a limitation on appraised value and any amendments or supplements, any economic impact evaluation made in connection with an application, any agreement between applicant and the district and any subsequent amendments or assignments, any district written finding or report filed with the comptroller as required under 34 Administrative Code Chapter 9, Subchapter F; and any completed annual eligibility report (Form 50-772A) submitted to the comptroller. *34 TAC 9.1051(19)*

School District  
Categories

For purposes of determining the required minimum amount of a qualified investment and the minimum amount of a limitation on appraised value, districts to which Tax Code Chapter 313, Subchapter B applies are categorized according to the taxable value of property in the district for the preceding tax year under Government Code Chapter 403, Subchapter M (comptroller's study of school district property values), as set out in Tax Code 313.022. *Tax Code 313.022(b); 34 TAC 9.1058(d)*

For purposes of determining the required minimum amount of a qualified investment and the minimum amount of a limitation on appraised value, districts to which Tax Code Chapter 313, Subchapter C applies are categorized according to the taxable value of industrial property in the district for the preceding tax year under Government Code Chapter 403, Subchapter M (comptroller's study of school district property values), as set out in Tax Code 313.052. *Tax Code 313.052; 34 TAC 9.1058(d)*

Minimum Amounts  
of Qualified  
Investment

For each category of district established by Tax Code 313.022, the minimum amount of a qualified investment is set out in Tax Code 313.023. *Tax Code 313.023*

For each category of district established by Tax Code 313.052, the minimum amount of a qualified investment is set out in Tax Code 313.053. *Tax Code 313.053*

Eligibility

Tax Code Chapter 313, Subchapters B and C apply only to property owned by an entity subject to franchise tax (Tax Code Chapter 171). To be eligible for a limitation on appraised value, the entity must use the property for a purpose stated in Tax Code 313.024.

*Exception for  
Wind-Powered  
Energy Device*

An owner of a parcel of land that is located wholly or partly in a reinvestment zone, a new building constructed on the parcel of land, a new improvement erected or affixed on the parcel of land, or tangible personal property placed in service in the building or improvement or on the parcel of land may not receive a limitation on appraised value for the parcel of land, building, improvement, or tangible personal property under an agreement under Tax Code Chapter 313, Subchapter B that is entered into on or after September 1, 2017, if, on or after that date, a wind-powered energy device is installed or constructed on the same parcel of land at a location that is within 25 nautical miles of the boundaries of a military aviation facility located in this state. This prohibition applies regardless of whether the wind-powered energy device is installed or constructed at a location that is in the reinvestment zone.

*Tax Code 313.024*

Application for  
Limitation on  
Appraised Value

The owner or lessee of, or the holder of another possessory interest in, any qualified property may apply to the board for a limitation on the appraised value of the person's qualified property for district maintenance and operations ad valorem tax purposes. An application must be made on the form prescribed by the comptroller, must include the information required by the comptroller, and must be accompanied by:

1. The application fee established by the board;
2. Information sufficient to show that the real and personal property identified in the application as qualified property meets the applicable criteria established by Tax Code 313.021(2); and
3. Any information required by the comptroller for the purposes of Tax Code 313.026 (economic impact evaluation).

*Tax Code 313.025(a)*

*Required  
Contents and  
Format*

A completed application shall consist of, at a minimum, the items set forth in 34 Administrative Code 9.1053(a)(1) and shall be provided in the formats specified in 34 Administrative Code 9.1053(a)(2).

Optional  
Requests

An applicant may include in an application:

1. A request that the district waive the applicable requirement to create new jobs. In order for a completed application to include a job waiver request, the applicant shall submit the information specified in 34 Administrative Code 9.1053(b)(1); or
2. A request to begin the qualifying time period on a date that is after the date that the application is approved. In order for a completed application to include a qualifying time period deferral request, the applicant shall submit the information specified in 34 Administrative Code 9.1053(b)(2).

*34 TAC 9.1053(a), (b)*

*Changes*

At the request of the district or the comptroller, or with the prior approval of the district and the comptroller, the applicant may submit an application amendment or application supplement at any time after the submission of the initial application. In order to be considered as part of the application, the application amendment or supplement shall:

1. Be submitted in the same form or schedule and manner as the information was initially submitted or should have been initially submitted;

2. Include a date for the submission and a sequential number identifying the number of submissions made by the applicant;
3. Have the signature of the authorized representative(s) by which the applicant confirms and attests to the truth and accuracy of the information submitted in the application amendment or supplement, as applicable, to the best knowledge and belief of the applicant and its representative(s); and
4. Be submitted before the 120th day after the application was accepted by the district or within another time period as provided in writing by the comptroller.

*34 TAC 9.1053(c)*

If a district receives an amended application or a supplemental application from an applicant after the district has prepared or sent written notice that the applicant has submitted a completed application, the district shall either:

1. Reject the amended application, supplemental application, or application, in whole or in part, and discontinue consideration of any submission by the applicant;
2. With the written concurrence of the comptroller, consider the completed application, as amended or supplemented, before the 151st day from the application review start date; or
3. Review the documents submitted by the applicant, issue an amended written notice of a completed application, and present the amended application to the board in the manner and time period authorized by 34 Administrative Code 9.1053(c)(5).

*34 TAC 9.1054(e)* [See Acting on Completed Application below]

Confidential  
Business  
Information

Information provided to a district in connection with an application for a limitation on appraised value that describes the specific processes or business activities to be conducted or the specific tangible personal property to be located on real property covered by the application shall be segregated in the application from other information in the application and is confidential and not subject to public disclosure unless the board approves the application. Other information in the custody of a district or the comptroller in connection with the application, including information related to the economic impact of a project or the essential elements of eligibility under Tax Code Chapter 313, such as the nature and amount of the projected investment, employment, wages, and benefits, may not be considered confidential business information if the board agrees to consider the application. Information in the custody of a



district or the comptroller if the board approves the application is not confidential under this provision. *Tax Code 313.028; 34 TAC 9.1055(a)(1)–(4)*

At the time that the applicant submits its application, application amendment, or application supplement, the applicant may request that all or parts of such document not be posted on the internet and not otherwise be publicly released. In order to make such request, the applicant shall:

1. Submit a written request that:
  - a. Specifically lists each document or portion of document and each entry in any form prescribed by the comptroller that the applicant contends is confidential; and
  - b. Identifies specific detailed reasons stating why the applicant believes each item listed should be considered confidential and identifies any relevant legal authority in support of the request;
2. Segregate the documents which are subject to the request from the other documents submitted with the application, application amendment, or application supplement that are not subject to the request; and
3. Adequately designate the documents subject to the request as “confidential.”

*34 TAC 9.1053(e)*

Action on  
Application  
*Initial Review*

Within seven days of receipt of each document, the district shall submit to the comptroller a copy of the application and the proposed agreement between the applicant and the district. If the applicant submits an economic analysis of the proposed project, the district shall submit a copy of the analysis to the comptroller. In addition, the district shall submit to the comptroller any subsequent revision of or amendment to any of those documents within seven days of receipt. *Tax Code 313.025(a-1); 34 TAC 9.1054(b)*

*Acting on  
Completed  
Application*

If the board by official action elects to consider an application and determines that the application received is a completed application, the district shall:

1. Provide written notice to the applicant and to the comptroller, with a copy to the appraisal district, that the district has received and will be considering a completed application. The notice shall include:
  - a. The date on which the application was received;



- b. The date on which the board elected to consider the application; and
    - c. The date on which the district determined that applicant has submitted a completed application;
  2. At the time the district provides notice of a completed application, deliver to the comptroller:
    - a. A copy of the completed application including all material required by 34 Administrative Code 9.1053(a), and if applicable (b), (relating to Entity Requesting Agreement to Limit Appraised Value); and
    - b. A request to the comptroller to provide an economic impact evaluation;
  3. If the district maintains a generally accessible internet web site, provide a clear and conspicuous link on its web site to the internet web site maintained by the comptroller where substantive documents for the value limitation application for such district are posted;
  4. On request of the comptroller, provide such written documents containing information requested by the comptroller as necessary for the consideration of a limitation on appraised value pursuant to Tax Code Chapter 313 within 20 days of the date of the request.

*34 TAC 9.1054(c)(1)–(4)*

*Economic Impact  
Evaluation and  
Certification*

The board is not required to consider an application for a limitation on appraised value. If the board elects to consider an application, the board shall deliver a copy of the application to the comptroller and request that the comptroller conduct an economic impact evaluation of the proposed investment. The comptroller shall conduct or contract with a third person to conduct the economic impact evaluation, which shall be completed and provided to the board, along with the comptroller's certificate or written explanation of the decision not to issue a certificate, as soon as practicable but not later than the 90th day after the date the comptroller receives the application. The board shall provide to the comptroller or to a third person contracted by the comptroller to conduct the economic impact evaluation any requested information. The board shall provide a copy of the economic impact evaluation to the applicant on request. *Tax Code 313.025(b); 34 TAC 9.1055(d)*

Supplemental application information, amended application information, and additional information requested by the comptroller shall be promptly forwarded to the comptroller within 20 days of the

date of the request. On request of the district or applicant, the comptroller may extend the deadline for providing additional information for a period of not more than ten working days. *34 TAC 9.1055(b)(1)(A)–(B)*

After receiving a copy of the application, the comptroller shall determine whether the property meets the requirements for eligibility for a limitation on appraised value. The comptroller shall notify the board of the comptroller's determination and provide the applicant an opportunity for a hearing before the determination becomes final. If the comptroller's determination becomes final, the comptroller is not required to provide an economic impact evaluation of the application or to submit a certificate for a limitation on appraised value of the property or a written explanation of the decision not to issue a certificate, and the board may not grant the application. *Tax Code 313.025(h), (i); 34 TAC 9.1055(b)(3), (c), (d), .1056*

*Effect on  
Instructional  
Facilities*

The comptroller shall promptly deliver a copy of the application to the Texas Education Agency (TEA). TEA shall determine the effect that the applicant's proposal will have on the number or size of the district's instructional facilities and submit a written report containing TEA's determination to the district. The board shall provide any requested information to TEA. Not later than the 45th day after the date TEA receives the application, TEA shall make the required determination and submit the written report to the board. *Tax Code 313.025(b-1)*

Fees

The board by official action shall establish reasonable nonrefundable application fees to be paid by property owners who apply to the district for a limitation on the appraised value of the person's property. The amount of an application fee must be reasonable and may not exceed the estimated cost to the district of processing and acting on an application, including any cost to the district associated with the required economic impact evaluation. *Tax Code 313.031(b); 34 TAC 9.1054(a)*

The total fee shall be paid at the time the application is submitted to the district. Any fees not accompanying the original application shall be considered supplemental payments. *34 TAC 9.1054(a)*

The comptroller may charge the applicant a fee sufficient to cover the costs of providing the economic impact evaluation. *Tax Code 313.025(b)*

*Supplemental  
Payments*

A person and the district may not enter into an agreement under which the person agrees to provide supplemental payments to a district or any other entity on behalf of a district in an amount that exceeds an amount equal to the greater of \$100 per student per

year in average daily attendance or \$50,000 per year, or for a period that exceeds the period beginning with the qualifying time period and ending December 31 of the third tax year after the date the person's eligibility for a limitation under Tax Code Chapter 313 expires. This limit does not apply to amounts described below at item 4 at Contents, Required and item 1 at Contents, Optional. *Tax Code 313.027(i)*

Approval

The board shall approve or disapprove an application not later than the 150th day after the date the application is filed, unless the economic impact evaluation has not been received or an extension is agreed to by the board and the applicant. *Tax Code 313.025(b)*

The board may extend the time period to approve a completed application required only if:

1. Either:
  - a. An economic impact analysis has not been submitted to the district by the comptroller; or
  - b. By agreement with the applicant; and
2. Notice of the extension is provided to the comptroller within seven days of the decision to provide the extension.

*34 TAC 9.1054(d)*

Before approving or disapproving an application that the board elects to consider, the board must make a written finding as to any criteria considered by the comptroller in conducting the economic impact evaluation under Tax Code 313.026. The board shall deliver a copy of those findings to the applicant.

The board may approve an application only if the board finds that the information in the application is true and correct, finds that the applicant is eligible for the limitation on the appraised value of the person's qualified property, and determines that granting the application is in the best interest of the district and this state.

The board may not approve an application unless the comptroller submits to the board a certificate for a limitation on appraised value of the property.

*Tax Code 313.025(d-1), (e), (f)*

When presented a completed application for which the comptroller has submitted a certificate for a limitation, the board shall either:

1. By majority vote adopt a written resolution approving the application which shall include:

- a. Written findings:
    - (1) As to each criterion listed in 34 Administrative Code 9.1055(d)(3)(B)–(D) (relating to Comptroller Application Review and Agreement to Limit Appraised Value);
    - (2) As to the criteria required by Tax Code 313.025(f-1) (regarding waiver of new jobs creation requirement) if applicable;
    - (3) That the information in the application is true and correct; and
    - (4) That the applicant is eligible for the limitation on the appraised value of the entity’s qualified property;
  - b. A determination that granting the application is in the best interest of the district and this state; and
  - c. Designate and direct a representative of the board to execute the agreement for property tax limitation presented by the approved applicant that complies with 34 Administrative Code Chapter 9, Subchapter F and Tax Code Chapter 313;
2. By majority vote disapprove the application; or
  3. Take no official action and the application shall be considered disapproved on the 151st day after the application review start date.

*34 TAC 9.1054(c)(5), (f)*

In determining whether to approve an application, the board is entitled to request and receive assistance from the comptroller, the Texas Economic Development and Tourism Office, the Texas Workforce Investment Council, and the Texas Workforce Commission. The Texas Economic Development and Tourism Office or its successor may recommend that a district approve an application under Tax Code Chapter 313. In determining whether to approve an application, the board shall consider any recommendation made by the Texas Economic Development and Tourism Office or its successor. *Tax Code 313.025(c), (g)*

Continued Eligibility

In order to obtain and continue to receive a limitation on appraised value pursuant to Tax Code Chapter 313, an applicant shall:

1. Have a completed application approved by the board in compliance with 34 Administrative Code 9.1054(f) (relating to

School District Application Review and Agreement to Limit Appraised Value);

2. At least 20 days prior to the meeting at which the board is scheduled to consider the application, provide to the district and the comptroller a Texas Economic Development Act Agreement, as specified in 34 Administrative Code 9.1052(a)(6), with terms acceptable to the applicant;
3. If the applicant includes a combined group or members of the combined group, have the agreement executed by the authorized representative of each member of the combined group that owns a direct interest in property subject to the proposed agreement by which such members are jointly and severally liable for the performance of the stipulations, provisions, terms, and conditions of the agreement;
4. Comply with all stipulations, provisions, terms, and conditions of the agreement for a limitation on appraised value executed with the district, 34 Administrative Code Chapter 9, Subchapter F, and Tax Code Chapter 313;
5. Be and remain in good standing under the laws of this state and maintain legal status as an entity;
6. Owe no delinquent taxes to the state;
7. Maintain eligibility for limitation on appraised value pursuant to Tax Code Chapter 313; and
8. Provide to the district, the comptroller, and the appraisal district any change to information provided in the application, including but not limited to changes of the authorized representative(s); changes to the location and contact information for the approved applicant including all members of the combined group participating in the limitation agreement; and copies of any valid assignments of the agreement and contact information for authorized representative(s) of any assignees.

*34 TAC 9.1053(f)*

Agreement

The board and the property owner shall enter into a written agreement for the implementation of the limitation on appraised value on the owner's qualified property. *Tax Code 313.027(d); 34 TAC 9.1054(g), .1060*

If the comptroller determines that the agreement as submitted by the applicant does not comply with Tax Code Chapter 313 or the applicable rules or that the agreement contains provisions that are not consistent with or represents information significantly different

from that presented in the application as submitted, the comptroller may amend or withdraw the comptroller certificate for a limitation, and provide written notification to the district of the actions taken.

*34 TAC 9.1055(e)(2)–(3)*

*Limitation on  
Appraised Value*

If the person's application is approved by the board, the appraised value for district maintenance and operations ad valorem tax purposes of the person's qualified property as described in the agreement between the person and the district may not exceed the lesser of:

1. The market value of the property; or
2. Subject to the minimum limitation amount below, the amount agreed to by the board.

Minimum  
Limitation

The amount agreed to by the board must be an amount in accordance with Tax Code 313.027(b), according to the category to which the district belongs. [See School District Categories above] A district, regardless of category, may agree to a greater amount.

*Tax Code 313.027(a), (b), (c)*

For a district to which Tax Code Chapter 313, Subchapter C applies, the amount agreed to by the board must be an amount in accordance with Tax Code 313.054, according to the category to which the district belongs. [See School District Categories above] A district, regardless of category, may agree to a greater amount. *Tax Code 313.054*

*Contents*

Required

The agreement must:

1. Provide that the limitation applies for a period of ten years;
2. Specify the beginning date of the limitation, which must be January 1 of the first tax year that begins after the application date, the qualifying time period, or the date commercial operations begin at the site of the project;
3. Describe with specificity the qualified investment that the person will make on or in connection with the person's qualified property that is subject to the limitation; other property of the person that is not specifically described in the agreement is not subject to the limitation unless the board, by official action, provides that the other property is subject to the limitation;
4. Incorporate each relevant provision of Tax Code Chapter 313, Subchapter B, and, to the extent necessary, include provisions for the protection of future district revenues through the

adjustment of the minimum valuations, the payment of revenue offsets, and other mechanisms agreed to by the property owner and the district;

5. Require the property owner to maintain a viable presence in the district for at least five years after the date the limitation on appraised value of the owner's property expires;
6. Provide for the termination of the agreement, the recapture of ad valorem tax revenue lost as a result of the agreement if the owner of the property fails to comply with the terms of the agreement, and payment of a penalty or interest, or both, on that recaptured ad valorem tax revenue;
7. Specify the ad valorem tax years covered by the agreement;
8. Be in a form approved by the comptroller; and
9. Disclose any consideration promised in conjunction with the application and the limitation.

*Tax Code 313.027(a-1), (e), (f), (j)*

Optional

The agreement may:

1. Provide that the property owner will protect the district in the event the district incurs extraordinary education-related expenses related to the project that are not directly funded in state aid formulas, including expenses for the purchase of portable classrooms and the hiring of additional personnel to accommodate a temporary increase in student enrollment attributable to the project.
2. Specify any conditions the occurrence of which will require the district and the property owner to renegotiate all or any part of the agreement.
3. Provide for a deferral of the date on which the qualifying time period for the project is to commence or, subsequent to the date the agreement is entered into, be amended to provide for such a deferral. The agreement may not provide for the deferral of the date on which the qualifying time period is to commence to a date later than January 1 of the fourth tax year that begins after the date the application is approved except that if the agreement is one of a series of agreements related to the same project, the agreement may provide for the deferral of the date on which the qualifying time period is to commence to a date not later than January 1 of the sixth tax year that begins after the date the application is approved.

*Tax Code 313.027(f), (h)*



If an agreement for limitation on appraised value includes a provision in which the qualifying time period starts more than one year after the date that the application is approved, no earlier than 180 days and no later than 90 days prior to the start of the deferred qualifying time period:

1. The district shall provide the comptroller:
  - a. Copies of any documents or other information received from the applicant; and
  - b. After reviewing documents and information provided by the applicant, either:
    - (1) A written acknowledgment of receiving the application amendment or supplement; or
    - (2) A statement that no such amendment or supplement has been submitted; and
2. If the comptroller provides:
  - a. A comptroller certificate for a limitation with conditions different from the existing agreement, the board shall hold a meeting and determine whether to amend the agreement to include the conditions required by the comptroller or terminate the agreement; or
  - b. A written explanation of the comptroller's decision not to re-issue a certificate, the district shall terminate the agreement.

*34 TAC 9.1054(h), .1055(g)*

Compliance and  
Enforcement

The district shall provide to the comptroller any documents that reasonably appear to be substantive documents, and, within seven days of executing the agreement, a copy of the executed agreement and any attachments thereto. The district shall provide a copy of the executed agreement to the appraisal district.

The district shall comply with and enforce the stipulations, provisions, terms, and conditions of the agreement for limitation of the appraised value, 34 Administrative Code Chapter 9, Subchapter F, and Tax Code Chapter 313. To determine and obtain compliance with each agreement, for each calendar year during the term of the agreement the district shall require the approved applicant to submit:

1. Either the information necessary to complete the annual eligibility report, or a completed annual eligibility report;

2. A completed job creation compliance report (Form 50-825);  
and
3. Any information required by the state auditor office or its designee.

*34 TAC 9.1054(i)*

Disclosure of  
Appraised Value  
Limitation  
Information

If a district maintains a generally accessible internet website, the district shall maintain a link on its internet website to the area of the comptroller's internet website where information on each of the district's agreements to limit appraised value is maintained. *Tax Code 313.0265(c)*

Accessibility of  
Documents

Any documents submitted in an electronic format (including searchable pdfs) to the comptroller must comply with the accessibility standards and specifications described in 1 Administrative Code Chapters 206 and 213. *34 TAC 9.1055(a)(5)*

**Texas Economic  
Development Act**

Purpose

This policy outlines the procedures to be used by the District for filing, accepting, and reviewing applications made under the Texas Economic Development Act, set forth in Chapter 313, Texas Tax Code.

Definitions

As used in this policy, the following phrases, words, and terms, when used in this section, shall have the following meanings, unless the context clearly indicates otherwise:

*Act*

“Act” shall mean the Texas Economic Development Act as set forth in Chapter 313, Texas Tax Code.

*Applicant*

“Applicant” shall mean a corporation or limited liability company that is subject to franchise tax under Tax Code 171.001, which applies to the District for a limitation on the appraised value of qualified property in a reinvestment zone under the Texas Economic Development Act.

*Application*

“Application” shall mean the Application for Appraised Value Limitation On Qualified Property (Form 50-296) adopted by the comptroller at 34 Administrative Code Section 9.107(C)(1)(A).

*Application  
Deadline*

“Application deadline” shall mean September 4 of any year for an appraised value limitation to be effective as of January 1 of the next year following the date of application.

*Application Fee*

“Application fee” shall mean the nonrefundable application fee to be paid by an applicant that applies for a limitation on the appraised value of property under this policy.

*Board*

“Board” shall mean the Board of Trustees of the Arlington Independent School District.

*Comptroller*

“Comptroller” shall mean the comptroller of public accounts of the state of Texas.

*Comptroller’s  
Rules*

“Comptroller’s rules” shall mean rules adopted by the comptroller that are set forth at 34 Administrative Code Section 9.107.

*District*

“District” shall mean the Arlington Independent School District.

Filing Application

Each application filed under this policy shall be filed by the applicant with the Superintendent or designee. Upon receipt of a completed application and the application fee, the Superintendent or designee shall notify the applicant in writing of the receipt of the application and application fee.

Applications submitted with the appropriate application fee shall be considered by the Board after the completion of the economic analysis required by the Act and comptroller’s rules.

Applications submitted without the application fee shall be held by the Superintendent or designee until satisfactory arrangements for the payment of the application fee have been made. The Superintendent's determination of whether satisfactory arrangements for the payment of the application fee have been made shall be final.

The application submitted to the District is public information. Information submitted to the District in connection with the application shall be presumed to be public information unless the applicant clearly identifies such as confidential by law or proprietary information at the time of its submission to the District.

---

**Note:** Even if the application identifies certain information as confidential or proprietary, the District may be required to release the information if ordered by the attorney general.

---

Standard  
Application Fee

The application fee payable to the District for the processing of an application under this policy shall be \$75,000 for all projects involving requests for each appraised value limitation on qualified property of up to \$300,000,000 in value.

The application fee is not refundable except:

1. For large project fees after the initial tender as set forth below;  
or
2. In the event of a summary disposition as defined below.

Large Project  
Application Fee

For each application for an appraised value limitation on qualified property in excess of \$300,000,000 in value, the Board may, at its discretion, set a higher application fee, if in the opinion of the Board an analysis of the application is of such complexity so as to require a higher fee. An applicant for an appraised value limitation on qualified property in excess of \$300,000,000 shall initially tender an application fee of \$75,000. In the event that the Board sets a higher fee, the applicant shall be entitled to withdraw its application and its application fee if the applicant disagrees with the higher fee set by the Board.

Summary  
Disposition

If in the opinion of the Superintendent the application is not in the best interest of the District, the Superintendent may schedule the application for summary disposition. If requested by the Superintendent, the Board shall conduct a summary disposition at the next available meeting after which the request is made. At the summary disposition the Board shall consider the position of the Superintendent and may consider either a written or oral presentation by the applicant. If, after considering the summary disposition request, the

	<p>Board determines that the application is not in the best interest of the District, the application shall be rejected. In the event that the Board grants a summary disposition, the application fee shall be returned to the applicant.</p>
Processing the Application	<p>Upon receipt of the application and the application fee, the Superintendent shall take the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Send written confirmation acknowledging receipt of the application and application fee to the applicant.</li><li>2. Forward a copy of the application to the comptroller and to the county appraisal district.</li><li>3. Engage the services of the District's consultants to conduct the analyses required by the Act and the comptroller's rules if such consultants have been selected by the Board. In the event that no consultants have been designated for these purposes, the Superintendent shall immediately commence the process of identifying and selecting consultants in accordance with District policy.</li><li>4. If the District receives an application for an appraised value limitation on qualified property in excess of \$300,000,000 in value, the Superintendent shall schedule the setting of an appropriate application fee at the next available Board meeting.</li></ol>
Consulting Services	<p>Upon receipt of an application and the application fee, the Superintendent shall direct the District's consultants to begin an analysis of the economic impact, the impact on District finances, any legal implications of the application and development of a revenue protection agreement. The consultants shall be paid for their services from the application fee. The Superintendent and such consultants as are retained shall complete their analysis within sufficient time to be considered by the Board in its final determination on the application.</p>
Public Hearing	<p>The Board's final determination of the application shall be made after a public hearing at which the Superintendent, the District's consultants, the applicant, and members of the public will have a reasonable opportunity to present their views on the proposed application.</p>
Findings of Fact	<p>After the public hearing, the Board shall deliberate on the proper findings of fact to make considering the application. The Board shall also consider any proposed agreement with the applicant to provide for protection from and/or compensation for any financial risks undertaken by the District in accepting the application.</p>

After conducting a public hearing, the Board shall make specific written findings on those following matters required by either the Act or the comptroller's rules.

Upon completion, the findings of fact and the agreement between the District and the applicant shall be transmitted to the comptroller and to the county appraisal district. Copies of the findings of fact and agreement shall be available for public inspection.

<b>Appraisal Function</b>	The county appraisal district is responsible for appraising property in the appraisal district for ad valorem tax purposes of each taxing unit in the appraisal district. <i>Tax Code 6.01(b)</i>
Notice of Boundary Change	If a new taxing unit is formed or an existing taxing unit's boundaries are altered, the unit shall notify the appraisal office of the new boundaries within 30 days after the date the unit is formed or its boundaries are altered. <i>Tax Code 6.07</i>
<b>Appraisal District Board of Directors</b>	The appraisal district is governed by a board of directors. Five directors are appointed by the taxing units that participate in the appraisal district as provided by Tax Code 6.03.
Eligibility	<p>To be eligible to serve on the appraisal district board, an individual other than a county assessor-collector serving as a nonvoting director must be a resident of the appraisal district and must have resided in the appraisal district for at least two years immediately preceding the date the individual takes office. An individual who is otherwise eligible to serve on the appraisal district board is not ineligible because of membership on the governing body of a taxing unit.</p> <p>An employee of a taxing unit is not eligible to serve on the appraisal district board unless the employee is also a member of the governing body or an elected official of a taxing unit that participates in the appraisal district.</p> <p><i>Tax Code 6.03(a)</i></p>
Restrictions <i>Nepotism</i>	An individual is ineligible to serve on an appraisal district board if the individual is related within the second degree by consanguinity or affinity, as determined under Government Code Chapter 573 [see DBE], to an individual who is engaged in the business of appraising property for compensation for use in proceedings under Tax Code Title 1 (the Property Tax Code) or of representing property owners for compensation in proceedings under the Property Tax Code in the appraisal district.
<i>Delinquent Taxes</i>	<p>An individual is ineligible to serve on an appraisal district board if the individual owns property on which delinquent taxes have been owed to a taxing unit for more than 60 days after the date the individual knew or should have known of the delinquency unless the delinquent taxes and any penalties and interest are being paid under an installment payment agreement, or a suit to collect the delinquent taxes is deferred or abated.</p> <p><i>Tax Code 6.035(a)</i></p>



<i>Prior Property Appraiser or Owner Representative</i>	<p>An individual is ineligible to serve on an appraisal district board if the individual has engaged in the business of appraising property for compensation for use in proceedings under the Property Tax Code or of representing property owners for compensation in proceedings under the Property Tax Code in the appraisal district at any time during the preceding five years. <i>Tax Code 6.035(a-1)</i></p>
<i>Conflict of Interest</i>	<p>An individual is not eligible to be appointed to or to serve on an appraisal district board if the individual or a business entity in which the individual has a substantial interest is a party to a contract with:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The appraisal district; or</li><li>2. A taxing unit that participates in the appraisal district, if the contract relates to the performance of an activity governed by the Property Tax Code.</li></ol> <p>An individual has a substantial interest in a business entity if the combined ownership of the individual and the individual's spouse is at least ten percent of the voting stock or shares of the business entity or the individual or the individual's spouse is a partner, limited partner, or officer of the business entity.</p> <p>"Business entity" means a sole proprietorship, partnership, firm, corporation, holding company, joint-stock company, receivership, trust, or other entity recognized by law.</p> <p>A school district may not enter into a contract relating to the performance of an activity governed by the Property Tax Code with a member of the appraisal district board or with a business entity in which an appraisal district board member has a substantial interest.</p> <p><i>Tax Code 6.036</i></p>
Recall	<p>In accordance with Tax Code 6.033, the governing body of a taxing unit, by resolution filed with the chief appraiser, may call for the recall of a member of the appraisal district board for whom the unit cast any of its votes in the appointment of the appraisal district board. <i>Tax Code 6.033(a)</i></p>
<b>Ownership or Lease of Real Property</b>	<p>The acquisition or conveyance of real property or the construction or renovation of a building or other improvement by an appraisal district must be approved by the governing bodies of three-fourths of the taxing units entitled to vote on the appointment of appraisal district board members.</p> <p>The appraisal district board by resolution may propose a property transaction or other action for approval of the taxing units. The chief appraiser shall notify the presiding officer of each governing</p>

body entitled to vote on the proposal by delivering a copy of the appraisal district board's resolution, together with information showing the costs of other available alternatives to the proposal.

On or before the 30th day after the date the presiding officer receives notice of the proposal, the governing body of a taxing unit by resolution may approve or disapprove the proposal. If a governing body fails to act on or before that 30th day or fails to file its resolution with the chief appraiser on or before the 10th day after that 30th day, the proposal is treated as if it were disapproved by the governing body.

Proceeds

The proceeds of a conveyance of appraisal district real property shall be credited to each taxing unit that participates in the appraisal district in proportion to the unit's allocation of the appraisal district budget in the year in which the transaction occurs.

*Tax Code 6.051(b), (c)*

**Budget and  
Financing**

Each year the chief appraiser shall prepare a proposed budget for the operations of the appraisal district for the following tax year as described in Tax Code 6.06(a) and shall submit copies to each taxing unit and the appraisal district board before June 15.

Public Inspection

Each taxing unit shall maintain a copy of the proposed budget for public inspection at its principal administrative office.

Budget Adoption

The appraisal district board shall hold a public hearing to consider the budget. The secretary of the appraisal district board shall deliver to the presiding officer of the governing body of each taxing unit not later than the tenth day before the date of the hearing a written notice of the date, time, and place fixed for the hearing. The appraisal district board of directors shall complete its hearings, make any amendments to the proposed budget it desires, and finally approve a budget before September 15.

If governing bodies of a majority of the taxing units adopt resolutions disapproving a budget and file them with the secretary of the appraisal district board within 30 days after its adoption, the budget does not take effect, and the appraisal district board shall adopt a new budget within 30 days of the disapproval.

Amendments

The appraisal district board may amend the approved budget at any time, but the secretary of the appraisal district board must deliver a written copy of a proposed amendment to the presiding officer of the governing body of each taxing unit not later than the 30th day before the date the appraisal district board acts on it.

Allocation

Each taxing unit participating in the appraisal district is allocated a portion of the amount of the budget equal to the proportion that the

total dollar amount of property taxes imposed in the appraisal district by the unit for the tax year in which the budget proposal is prepared bears to the sum of the total dollar amount of property taxes imposed in the district by each participating unit for that year. Unless the governing body of a unit and the chief appraiser agree to a different method of payment, each taxing unit shall pay its allocation in four equal payments to be made at the end of each calendar quarter, and the first payment shall be made before January 1 of the year in which the budget takes effect.

*Tax Code 6.06(a)-(e)*

Changes in Method  
of Financing

The appraisal district board, by resolution adopted and delivered to each taxing unit after June 15 and before August 15, may prescribe a different method of allocating the costs of operating the appraisal district unless the governing body of any taxing unit adopts a resolution opposing the different method, and files it with the appraisal district board before September 1. If an appraisal district board proposal is rejected, the appraisal district board shall notify, in writing, each taxing unit before September 15.

The taxing units may adopt a different method of allocating the costs of operating the appraisal district in accordance with Tax Code 6.061.

*Tax Code 6.061*

**Disapproval of  
Appraisal District  
Board Actions**

If the governing bodies of a majority of the taxing units adopt resolutions disapproving an action, other than adoption of the budget, by the appraisal district board and file them with the secretary of the appraisal district board within 15 days after the action is taken, the action is revoked effective the day after the day on which the required number of resolutions is filed. *Tax Code 6.10*

**Appraisal Review  
Board**

An appraisal review board is established for each appraisal district. This does not preclude the boards of directors of two or more adjoining appraisal districts from providing for the operation of a consolidated appraisal review board by interlocal contract. Except as provided below, members of the appraisal review board are appointed by resolution of a majority of the appraisal district board of directors. *Tax Code 6.41*

Exception

In a county with a population of 120,000 or more, the members of the appraisal review board are appointed by the local administrative district judge under Government Code Chapter 74, Subchapter D, in the county in which the appraisal district is established. *Tax Code 6.41(d-1)*

LOCAL REVENUE SOURCES  
APPRAISAL DISTRICT

CCH  
(LEGAL)

Eligibility Appraisal review board members are subject to the eligibility restrictions described in Tax Code 6.412 and the conflict of interest provisions set forth in Tax Code 6.413. *Tax Code 6.412, .413*

Prohibition on Contracts A school district may not enter into a contract with a member of the appraisal review board established for an appraisal district in which the school district participates or with a business entity in which a member of the appraisal review board has a substantial interest as defined in Tax Code 6.413(d). *Tax Code 6.413(c)*

**Auxiliary Appraisal  
Review Board  
Members**

The appraisal district board by resolution may provide for a number of auxiliary appraisal review board members to hear taxpayer protests before the appraisal review board and to assist the board in performing its duties.

An auxiliary board member is appointed in the same manner and for the same term as an appraisal review board member and is subject to the same eligibility requirements and restrictions.

*Tax Code 6.414*

**Accounting System** A board must adopt and install a standard school fiscal accounting system that conforms with generally accepted accounting principles. The accounting system must meet the minimum requirements prescribed by the commissioner of education, subject to review and comment of the state auditor. *Education Code 44.007(a), (b)*

The rules for financial accounting are described in the official TEA publication, *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide. 19 TAC 109.1, .41*

**Report of Revenues and Expenditures** A report of the revenues and expenditures for the preceding fiscal year shall be filed with TEA on or before the date set by the State Board of Education. The report shall include management, cost accounting, and financial information in a format prescribed by the State Board and in a manner sufficient to enable the State Board to monitor the funding process and determine educational system costs by district, campus, and program. *Education Code 44.007(c), (d)*

**Financial Statement** The board shall prepare an annual financial statement that shows the following for each fund subject to its authority during the fiscal year:

1. The total receipts of the fund, itemized by source of revenue, including taxes, assessments, service charges, grants of state money, gifts, or other general sources from which funds are derived;
2. The total disbursements of the fund, itemized by the nature of the expenditure; and
3. The balance in the fund at the close of the fiscal year.

*Local Gov't Code 140.005*

Publication The board president shall submit the annual financial statement to a daily, weekly, or biweekly newspaper published within the boundaries of the district. If a daily, weekly, or biweekly newspaper is not published within the boundaries of the district, the financial statement shall be published in a newspaper in each county in which the district or any part of the district is located. The statement shall be published in accordance with the accounting method required by TEA not later than the 150th day after the date the fiscal year ends. *Local Gov't Code 140.006(c), (d)*

**Annual Local Debt Report** A district shall annually compile and report certain financial information ("Annual Local Debt Report") in the manner prescribed by Local Government Code 140.008 and 34 Administrative Code 10.1–.6. *Local Gov't Code 140.008(b); 34 TAC 10.2(a)*

The Annual Local Debt Report must include the following financial information:

1. Regarding total authorized debt obligations:
  - a. The amount of all authorized debt obligations;
  - b. The principal of all outstanding debt obligations;
  - c. The combined principal and interest required to pay all outstanding debt obligations on time and in full;
  - d. The amount of all authorized debt obligations secured by property taxes;
  - e. The principal of all outstanding debt obligations secured by property taxes;
  - f. The combined principal and interest required to pay all outstanding debt obligations secured by property taxes on time and in full;
  - g. The amount of all authorized debt obligations secured by property taxes expressed as a per capita amount;
  - h. The principal of all outstanding debt obligations secured by property taxes expressed as a per capita amount;
  - i. The combined principal and interest required to pay all outstanding debt obligations on time and in full for all obligations secured by property taxes expressed as a per capita amount; and
  - j. The current credit rating on total debt obligations given by any nationally recognized credit rating organization.
2. Regarding each authorized debt obligation:
  - a. The principal of each outstanding debt;
  - b. The principal of each outstanding debt obligation secured by property taxes expressed as a per capita amount;
  - c. The combined principal and interest required to pay each outstanding debt obligation on time and in full;
  - d. The combined principal and interest required to pay each outstanding debt obligation on time and in full expressed as a per capita amount;

- e. The issued and unissued amounts, the spent and unspent amounts, the maturity date and the stated purpose for which each debt obligation was authorized; and
  - f. The current credit rating on each debt obligation given by any nationally recognized credit rating organization.
3. Any other information considered relevant or necessary to explain the above required data elements, such as explanations of payment sources for different kinds of debt or projections of per capita amounts of ad valorem taxation-secured obligations as of the last day of the maximum term of the most recent debt obligation issued by the district.

*34 TAC 10.2; Local Gov't Code 140.008(b).*

Form

The comptroller shall provide an Annual Local Debt Report Form for use by a district. *34 TAC 10.3*

Reporting  
Requirement

On an annual basis and within 180 days of the end of the most recently completed fiscal year, a district shall either:

1. Submit via upload to the comptroller's internet website the completed Annual Local Debt Report Form provided by the comptroller and, if the district maintains an internet website, continually maintain a link from its website to the location on the comptroller's website where the district's financial information may be viewed; or
2. Post the information required in an Annual Local Debt Report on the district's own internet website.

The board of a district that elects to post its annual debt information on its own internet website as described above shall take action to ensure that:

1. This information is made available for inspection by any person and posted continuously on the district's website until the district posts the next year's annual debt information; and
2. The main office is posted continuously on the website and such information includes a physical address, mailing address, main telephone number, and an email address.

*34 TAC 10.4; Local Gov't Code 140.008(c), (d), (f)*

Definitions

The phrases, words, and terms used in the foregoing provisions shall have the meanings set out in 34 Administrative Code 10.1, unless the context clearly indicates otherwise. *34 TAC 10.1*



**Financial  
Management Report**

Each district must prepare and distribute an annual financial management report. *19 TAC 109.1001(q)(1)*

The district's annual financial management report must include a description of the district's financial management performance based on a comparison, provided by TEA, of the district's performance on the indicators in 19 Administrative Code 109.1001 to state established standards and the district's previous performance on the indicators. *Education Code 39.083(b)* [See CFC]

Each district must provide the public with an opportunity to comment on the report at a public hearing. *Education Code 39.083(d); 19 TAC 109.1001(q)(2)*

Report  
Requirements

The report shall contain information that discloses state-established standards and the district's financial management performance under each indicator for the current and previous year's financial accountability ratings, and any descriptive information required by the commissioner, including:

1. A copy of the superintendent's current employment contract or other written documentation of employment if no contract exists. This must disclose all compensation and benefits paid to the superintendent. The district may publish the superintendent's employment contract on the district's website instead of publishing it in the annual financial management report;
2. A summary schedule for the fiscal year (12-month period) of expenditures paid on behalf of the superintendent and each board member and total reimbursements received by the superintendent and each board member. This includes transactions on a district's credit card(s), debit card(s), stored-value card(s), and any other similar instrument(s) to cover expenses incurred by the superintendent and each board member. The summary schedule must separately report reimbursements for meals, lodging, transportation, motor fuel, and other items. The summary schedule of total reimbursements should not include reimbursements for supplies and materials that were purchased for the operation of the district;
3. A summary schedule for the fiscal year of the dollar amount of compensation and fees received by the superintendent from an outside school district or any other outside entity in exchange for professional consulting or other personal services. The schedule must separately report the amount received from each entity;

4. A summary schedule for the fiscal year of the total dollar amount of gifts that had a total economic value of \$250 or more received by the executive officers and board members.
  - a. This reporting requirement applies only to:
    - (1) Gifts received by the district's executive officers and board members (and their immediate family as described by Government Code, Chapter 573, Subchapter B, Relationships by Consanguinity or by Affinity) from an outside entity that received payments from the district in the prior fiscal year, and
    - (2) Gifts from competing vendors that were not awarded contracts in the prior fiscal year.
  - b. This reporting requirement does not apply to reimbursement by an outside entity for travel-related expenses when the purpose of the travel was to investigate matters directly related to an executive officer's or board member's duties or to investigate matters related to attendance at education-related conferences and seminars with the primary purpose of providing continuing education; however, this exclusion does not apply to trips for entertainment purposes or pleasure trips. This reporting requirement excludes an individual gift or a series of gifts from a single outside entity that had a total economic value of less than \$250 per executive officer or board member;
5. A summary schedule for the fiscal year of the dollar amount received by board members for the total amount of business transactions with the district. This reporting requirement is not to duplicate the items disclosed in the summary schedule of reimbursements received by board members; and
6. Any other information the board of a district determines to be useful.

*19 TAC 109.1001(q)(3)*

Public Hearing

The board shall hold a public hearing on the report. The public hearing must be held in the district's facilities within two months after receiving a final financial accountability rating.

At the hearing, the district must provide the annual financial management report to the attending parents and taxpayers.

*Education Code 39.083(d); 19 TAC 109.1001(q)(4), (5)*

*Notice*

The board must give notice of the hearing to owners of real property in the geographic boundaries of the district and to parents of district students.

In addition to other notice required by law, the board must provide notice of the hearing:

1. To a newspaper of general circulation in the geographic boundaries of the district in one posting prior to holding the public meeting, providing the time and place of the hearing. The notice in the newspaper may not be earlier than 30 days prior or later than ten days before the date of the hearing. If no newspaper is published in the county in which the district's central administration office is located, then the board must publish the notice in the county nearest to the county seat of the county in which the district's central administration office is located; and
2. Through electronic mail to the mass communication media serving the district, including, but not limited to, radio and television.

*Education Code 39.083(d); 19 TAC 109.1001(q)(4)*

Dissemination

After the hearing, the report shall be disseminated in the district in the manner prescribed by the commissioner. *Education Code 39.083(e)*

Records Retention

The district must retain the annual financial management report for at least three years after the public hearing and make it available to parents and taxpayers upon request. *19 TAC 109.1001(q)(6)*

Corrective Action  
Plan

Each district that received an F rating must file a corrective action plan with TEA, prepared in accordance with instructions from the commissioner, within one month after the district's public hearing. *19 TAC 109.1001(q)*

**Projected Deficit**

If the commissioner, based on the indicators adopted under Education Code 39.082 [see CFC], projects a deficit for a district general fund within the following three school years, TEA shall provide the district interim financial reports, including projected revenues and expenditures, to evaluate the district's current budget status.

TEA may require a district to submit additional information needed to produce a financial report. If a district fails to provide information requested or if the commissioner determines that the information submitted by a district is unreliable, the commissioner may order the district to acquire professional services under Education Code 39A.902 [see AIC].

*Education Code 39.0823*

**Annual Audit**

The board shall have a district's fiscal accounts audited annually at district expense by a Texas certified or public accountant holding a permit from the State Board of Public Accountancy.

The audit shall be completed following the close of each fiscal year, and shall meet at least the minimum requirements and be in the format prescribed by the State Board of Education (SBOE), subject to review and comment by the state auditor. The audit shall include an audit of the accuracy of the fiscal information provided by a district through the Public Education Information Management System (PEIMS).

*Education Code 44.008(a), (b)*

**Audit Requirements  
and Procedures**

A district must file with TEA an annual financial and compliance report and, if applicable, a state compensatory agreed-upon procedures report. These reports must be audited by an independent auditor, and the audit must be reviewed by TEA, including review of auditors' working papers, in accordance with the *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide (FASRG)*.

The annual financial audit report and state compensatory agreed-upon procedures report are due 150 days after the end of the fiscal year.

*Independent  
Auditor*

A district must hire at its own expense an independent auditor to conduct an independent audit of its financial statements and provide an opinion on its annual financial and compliance report.

The independent auditor must:

1. Be associated with a certified public accountancy (CPA) firm that has a current valid license issued by the Texas State Board of Public Accountancy;
2. Be a certified public accountant with a current valid license issued by the Texas State Board of Public Accountancy, as required under Education Code 44.008; and
3. Adhere to the generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS), adopted by the American Institute of CPAs (AICPA), as amended, and the generally accepted government auditing standards (GAGAS), adopted by the U.S. Government Accountability Office, as amended.

The CPA firm must:

1. Be a member of the AICPA Governmental Audit Quality Center (GAQC);
2. Adhere to GAQC's membership requirements; and

3. Collectively have the knowledge, skills, and experience to be competent for the audit being conducted, including thorough knowledge of the government auditing requirements and:
  - a. Texas public school district environment; or
  - b. Public sector; or
  - c. Nonprofit sector.

If at any time the TEA division responsible for financial compliance reviews an audit firm's working papers and finds that the firm or the quality of the work does not meet the required standards, the division may require the district to change its audit firm.

*19 TAC 109.23*

Financial  
Accountability  
System Resource  
Guide

The rules for financial accounting, including the selection of an auditor and the requirements for the audit, are described in the official TEA publication, *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide*, as amended, which is adopted as the SBOE's official rule. *19 TAC 109.41*

Filing of Report

A copy of the annual audit report, approved by the board, shall be filed with TEA not later than the 150th day after the end of the fiscal year for which the audit was made. If a board does not approve the audit report, it shall nevertheless file a copy of it with TEA, accompanied by a statement detailing its reasons for failing to approve the report. *Education Code 44.008(d)*

**Financial Records**

Each treasurer receiving or having control of any school fund shall keep a full and separate itemized account of each of the different classes of school funds received, and these records shall be available to audit. *Education Code 44.008(c)*

**Financial  
Accountability  
Rating System**

TEA will assign a financial accountability rating to each district. The commissioner of education will evaluate the rating system every three years and may modify the system to improve the effectiveness of the rating system. *Education Code 39.082; 19 TAC 109.1001(b), (c)*

Data Reviewed

TEA will use the following sources of data in calculating the financial accountability indicators for school districts:

1. Audited financial data in a district's annual financial report, the audited annual report required by Education Code 44.008 [see Audit Requirements and Procedures above].
2. PEIMS data submitted by a district.
3. Warrant holds as reported by the comptroller.

4. The average daily attendance information used for foundation school program purposes for a district.

*19 TAC 109.1001(d)*

**Basis for Rating** TEA will base the financial accountability rating of a district on its overall performance on the financial measurements, ratios, and other indicators established by the commissioner. Financial accountability ratings for a rating year are based on the data from the immediate prior fiscal year. *19 TAC 109.1001(e)*

**Types of Ratings** The types of financial accountability ratings a district may receive are A for superior achievement, B for above standard achievement, C for standard achievement, and F for substandard achievement. A school district receiving territory due to an annexation order by the commissioner under Education Code 13.054, or consolidation under Education Code Chapter 41, Subchapter H, will not receive a rating for two consecutive years beginning with the rating year that is based on financial data from the fiscal year in which the order of annexation becomes effective. After the second rating year, the receiving district will be subject to the financial accountability rating system.

The commissioner may lower a financial accountability rating based on the findings of an action conducted under Education Code Chapter 39, or change a financial accountability rating in cases of disaster, flood, extreme weather conditions, fuel curtailment, or another calamity. A financial accountability rating remains in effect until replaced by a subsequent rating.

*19 TAC 109.1001(i), (k), (l)*

**Issuance of Ratings** TEA will issue a preliminary financial accountability rating to a district on or before August 8 of each year. TEA will not delay the issuance of a preliminary or final rating if a district fails to meet the statutory deadline under Education Code 44.008 for submitting the annual financial report. Instead, the district will receive an F rating for substandard achievement.

If TEA receives an appeal of a preliminary rating under 19 Administrative Code 109.1001(n), TEA will issue a final rating to a district no later than 60 days after the deadline for submitting appeals. If TEA does not receive an appeal of a preliminary rating, the preliminary rating automatically becomes a final rating 31 days after issuance of a preliminary rating.

*19 TAC 109.1001(m)*

*Appeals*

A district may appeal its preliminary financial accountability rating through the appeals process described at 19 Administrative Code 109.1001(n).

A final rating issued by TEA may not be appealed under Education Code 7.057 or any other law or rule. *19 TAC 109.1001(o)*

**Annual Audit of  
Dropout Records**

The commissioner shall develop a process for auditing district dropout records electronically. The commissioner shall also develop a system and standards for review of the audit or use systems already available at TEA. The system must be designed to identify districts that are at high risk of having inaccurate dropout records and that, as a result, require on-site monitoring of dropout records.

If the electronic audit of a district's dropout records indicates that the district is not at high risk of having inaccurate dropout records, the district may not be subject to on-site monitoring. If the risk-based system indicates that a district is at high risk of having inaccurate dropout records, the district is entitled to an opportunity to respond to the commissioner's determination before on-site monitoring may be conducted. A district must respond not later than the 30th day after the date the commissioner notifies the district of the commissioner's determination. If a district's response does not change the commissioner's determination that the district is at high risk of having inaccurate dropout records or if the district does not respond in a timely manner, the commissioner shall order TEA staff to conduct on-site monitoring.

*Education Code 39.308(a)–(c)*



---

**Note:** For additional legal requirements applicable to purchases with federal funds, see CBB. For additional legal requirements applicable to school nutrition procurement, see COA.

---

**Board Authority**

A board may adopt rules and procedures for the acquisition of goods and services. *Education Code 44.031(d)*

Delegation of  
Authority

A board may delegate its authority regarding an action authorized or required to be taken by a district by Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B, to a designated person, representative, or committee.

A board may not delegate the authority to act regarding an action authorized or required to be taken by the board by Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B.

*Disaster  
Exception*

Notwithstanding any other provision of the Education Code, in the event of a catastrophe, emergency, or natural disaster affecting a district, the board may delegate to the superintendent or designated person the authority to contract for the replacement, construction, or repair of school equipment or facilities under Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B if emergency replacement, construction, or repair is necessary for the health and safety of district students and staff.

*Education Code 44.0312*

**Purchases Valued at  
or Above \$50,000**

All district contracts for the purchase of goods and services, except contracts for the purchase of produce or vehicle fuel, valued at \$50,000 or more in the aggregate for each 12-month period, shall be made by the method that provides the best value for a district:

1. Competitive bidding for services other than construction services.
2. Competitive sealed proposals for services other than construction services.
3. A request for proposals for services other than construction services.
4. An interlocal contract.
5. The reverse auction procedure as defined by Government Code 2155.062(d).
6. The formation of a political subdivision corporation under Local Government Code 304.001 (regarding the purchase of electricity).

*Education Code 44.031(a)*

[See COA for requirements applicable to school nutrition purchases, including produce, using federal funds.]

---

**Note:** Regarding construction of school facilities, see CV generally; CVA for competitive bidding; CVB for competitive sealed proposals; CVC and CVD for contracts using a construction manager; CVE for design/build contracts; and CVF for job order contracts for minor repairs/alterations.

---

Factors

In awarding a contract, a district shall consider:

1. Purchase price.
2. The reputation of the vendor and of the vendor's goods or services.
3. The quality of the vendor's goods or services.
4. The extent to which the goods or services meet the district's needs.
5. The vendor's past relationship with the district.
6. The impact on the ability of the district to comply with laws relating to historically underutilized businesses.
7. The total long-term cost to the district to acquire the goods or services.
8. For a contract that is not for goods and services related to telecommunications and information services, building construction and maintenance, or instructional materials, whether the vendor or the vendor's ultimate parent company or majority owner has its principal place of business in this state or employs at least 500 persons in this state.
9. Any other relevant factor specifically listed in the request for bids or proposals.

*Education Code 44.031(b)*

In awarding a contract by competitive sealed bid under Education Code 44.031, a district that has its central administrative office located in a municipality with a population of less than 250,000 may consider a bidder's principal place of business in the manner provided by Local Government Code 271.9051. This section does not apply to the purchase of telecommunications services or information services, as those terms are defined by 47 U.S.C. Section 153. *Education Code 44.031(b-1)*

The factors listed above are the only criteria that may be considered by a district in its decision to award a contract. *R.G.V. Vending v. Weslaco Indep. Sch. Dist.*, 995 S.W.2d 897 (Tex. App.—Corpus Christi 1999, no pet.)

**Out-of-State Bidders**

A board shall not award a contract for services or for purchase of supplies, materials, or equipment to a bidder whose principal place of business is not in this state, unless the nonresident underbids the lowest bid submitted by a responsible resident bidder by an amount that is not less than the greater of the amount by which a resident bidder would be required to underbid a nonresident bidder to obtain a comparable contract in the state in which the nonresident's principal place of business is located, or a state in which a majority of the manufacturing relating to the contract will be performed. *Gov't Code 2252.001-.002*

This requirement shall not apply to a contract involving federal funds. A district shall rely on information published by the comptroller in evaluating the bids of a nonresident bidder. *Gov't Code 2252.003-.004*

**Required Contract Provision**

A district may not enter into a contract with a company for goods and services unless the contract contains a written verification from the company that it does not boycott Israel and will not during the term of the contract. *Gov't Code 2270.002*

"Company" means a for-profit sole proprietorship, organization, association, corporation, partnership, joint venture, limited partnership, limited liability partnership, or limited liability company, including a wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company, or affiliate of those entities or business associations that exists to make a profit. *Gov't Code 808.001(2)*

**Disclosure of Interested Parties**

A district may not enter into a contract that requires an action or vote of the board before the contract may be signed, or has a value of at least \$1 million, with a business entity unless the business entity submits a disclosure of interested parties to the district at the time the business entity submits the signed contract to the district. *Gov't Code 2252.908*

A contract does not require an action or vote by the board if the board has legal authority to delegate to its staff the authority to execute the contract, the board has delegated this authority, and the board does not participate in the selection of the business entity with which the contract is entered into. *1 TAC 46.1(c)*

Exclusions

The disclosure requirement does not apply to a contract with:

1. A publicly traded business entity, including a wholly owned subsidiary of the entity;

2. An electric utility, as defined by Utilities Code 31.002; or
3. A gas utility, as defined by Utilities Code 121.001.

*Gov't Code 2252.908(c)(4)–(6)*

Required Form

The disclosure of interested parties must be submitted on a form prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission (TEC) that includes a list of each interested party for the contract of which the contracting business entity is aware; and a written, unsworn declaration subscribed by the authorized agent of the contracting business entity as true under penalty of perjury that is in substantially the form set out in Government Code 2252.908(e)(2). *Gov't Code 2252.908(e); 1 TAC 46.5(a)*

The certification of filing and the completed disclosure of interested parties form generated by TEC's electronic filing application must be printed, signed by an authorized agent of the contracting business entity, and submitted to the district that is the party to the contract for which the form is being filed. *1 TAC 46.5(b)*

Deadline

A district that receives a completed disclosure of interested parties form and certification of filing shall notify TEC, in an electronic format prescribed by TEC, of the receipt of those documents not later than the 30th day after the date the board receives the disclosure. *1 TAC 46.5(c); Gov't Code 2252.908(f)*

Contract Changes

The disclosure requirements do not apply to a change made to an existing contract, including an amendment, change order, or extension of a contract except as set out below.

The disclosure requirements apply to a change made to an existing contract, including an amendment, change order, or extension of a contract if:

1. A disclosure of interested parties form was not filed for the existing contract; and either the changed contract requires an action or vote by the board or the value of the changed contract is at least \$1 million; or
2. The business entity submitted a disclosure of interested parties form to the district that is a party to the existing contract; and either there is a change to the disclosure; or the changed contract requires an action or vote by the board; or the value of the changed contract is at least \$1 million greater than the value of the existing contract.

*1 TAC 46.4*

Definitions

"Contract" means a contract between a board and a business entity at the time it is voted on by the board or at the time it binds the

board, whichever is earlier, and includes an amended, extended, or renewed contract. *1 TAC 46.3(a)*

“Business entity” means any entity recognized by law through which business is conducted, including a sole proprietorship, partnership, or corporation. The term includes an entity through which business is conducted with a district, regardless of whether the entity is a for-profit or nonprofit entity, and does not include a governmental entity or state agency. *Gov’t Code 2252.908(a)(1); 1 TAC 46.3(b)*

“Interested party” means a person who has a controlling interest in a business entity with whom a district contracts or who actively participates in facilitating the contract or negotiating the terms of the contract, including a broker, intermediary, adviser, or attorney for the business entity. *Gov’t Code 2252.908(a)(3); 1 TAC 46.3(d), (e)*

“Controlling interest” means:

1. An ownership interest or participating interest in a business entity by virtue of units, percentage, shares, stock, or otherwise that exceeds ten percent;
2. Membership on the board of directors or other governing body of a business entity of which the board or other governing body is composed of not more than ten members; or
3. Service as an officer of a business entity that has four or fewer officers, or service as one of the four officers most highly compensated by a business entity that has more than four officers. This subsection does not apply to an officer of a publicly held business entity or its wholly owned subsidiaries.

*1 TAC 46.3(c)*

“Signed” includes any symbol executed or adopted by a person with present intention to authenticate a writing, including an electronic signature. *1 TAC 46.3(f)*

“Value” of a contract is based on the amount of consideration received or to be received by a business entity from a board under the contract. *1 TAC 46.3(g)*

[See BBFA for additional conflict of interest disclosures.]

**Contract with Person  
Indebted to District**

A board may, by resolution, establish regulations permitting a school district to refuse to enter into a contract or other transaction with a person indebted to the school district. A district may refuse to award a contract to or enter into a transaction with an apparent low bidder or successful proposer that is indebted to the district.

The term “person” includes an individual, sole proprietorship, corporation, nonprofit corporation, partnership, joint venture, limited liability company, and any other entity that seeks to enter into a contract or other transaction with a district requiring board approval.

*Education Code 44.044*

**Notice Publication**

Notice of when and where bids or proposals or the responses to a request for qualifications will be received and opened shall be published in the county where a district’s central administrative office is located, once a week for at least two weeks prior to the deadline for receiving bids, proposals, or responses to a request for qualifications. If there is no newspaper in that county, the advertising shall be published in a newspaper in the county nearest the county seat of the county in which a district’s central administrative office is located. In a two-step procurement process, the time and place where the second-step bids, proposals, or responses will be received are not required to be published separately. *Education Code 44.031(g)*

**Electronic Bids or Proposals**

A district may receive bids or proposals through electronic transmission if the board adopts rules to ensure the identification, security, and confidentiality of electronic bids or proposals and to ensure that the electronic bids or proposals remain effectively unopened until the proper time.

An electronic bid or proposal is not required to be sealed. A provision of Education Code Chapter 44 that applies to a sealed bid or proposal applies to a bid or proposal received through electronic transmission in accordance with the rules adopted by the board.

*Education Code 44.0313*

**Professional Services**

The purchasing requirements of Education Code 44.031 do not apply to a contract for professional services rendered, including the services of an architect, attorney, certified public accountant, engineer, or fiscal agent.

A district may contract for professional services rendered by a financial consultant or a technology consultant in the manner provided by Government Code 2254.003, in lieu of the methods provided by Education Code 44.031.

*Education Code 44.031(f)*

Competitive bids shall not be solicited for professional services of any licensed or registered certified public accountant, architect, landscape architect, land surveyor, physician, optometrist, professional engineer, state-certified or state-licensed real estate ap-



praiser, or registered nurse. Contracts for these professional services shall be made on the basis of demonstrated competence and qualifications to perform the services and for a fair and reasonable price. *Gov't Code 2254.002, .003(a)*

An interlocal contract between a district and a purchasing cooperative may not be used to purchase engineering or architectural services. *Gov't Code 791.011(h)*

Prohibited  
Contracts

For provisions regarding prohibited contracts, see CV(LEGAL).

**Emergency Damage  
or Destruction**

If school equipment, a school facility, or a part of a school facility or personal property is destroyed or severely damaged or, as a result of an unforeseen catastrophe or emergency, undergoes major operational or structural failure, and a board determines that the delay posed by the methods provided for in Education Code 44.031 would prevent or substantially impair the conduct of classes or other essential school activities, then contracts for the replacement or repair of the equipment, school facility, or the part of the school facility may be made by methods other than those required by Education Code 44.031. *Education Code 44.031(h)*

**Computers**

A district may acquire computers and computer-related equipment, including computer software, through the Department of Information Resources (DIR) under contracts with the DIR in accordance with Government Code Chapter 2054 or 2157. *Education Code 44.031(i)*

**Automated  
Information System**

A district may purchase an automated information system using the purchasing method described by Government Code 2157.068 for commodity items or a purchasing method designated by the controller to obtain the best value for the state, including a request for offers method. A district that purchases an item using a method listed above satisfies any state law requiring the district to seek competitive bids for the purchase of the item. *Gov't Code 2157.006; 34 TAC 20.391*

**Automated External  
Defibrillators**

A school that purchases or leases an automated external defibrillator, as defined by Health and Safety Code 779.001, shall ensure that the defibrillator meets standards established by the federal Food and Drug Administration. *Education Code 44.047*

**Sole Source**

Compliance with Education Code 44.031 is not required for purchases that are available from only one source, including:

1. An item for which competition is precluded because of a patent, copyright, secret process, or monopoly.
2. A film, manuscript, or book.



3. A utility service, including electricity, gas, or water.
4. A captive replacement part or component for equipment.

The sole source exception shall not apply to mainframe data processing equipment and peripheral attachments with a single-item purchase price in excess of \$15,000.

*Education Code 44.031(j)–(k)*

**Insurance**

A contract for the purchase of insurance is a contract for the purchase of personal property and shall be made in accordance with Education Code 44.031. *Education Code 44.031; Atty. Gen. Op. DM-347 (1995)*

**Multiyear Contracts**

A district may execute an insurance contract for a period longer than 12 months, if the contract contains either or both of the provisions described at Commitment of Current Revenue, below. If a district executes a multiyear insurance contract, it need not advertise for insurance vendors until the 12-month period during which the district will be executing a new insurance contract. *Atty. Gen. Op. DM-418 (1996)*

**Competitive Bidding**

Except to the extent prohibited by other law and to the extent consistent with Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B, a school district may use competitive bidding to select a vendor as authorized by Education Code 44.031(a)(1).

A district shall award a competitively bid contract at the bid amount to the bidder offering the best value for the district. In determining the best value for the district, the district is not restricted to considering price alone but may consider any other factors stated in the selection criteria. The selection criteria may include the factors listed in Education Code 44.031(b) [see Factors, above].

Except as provided below, Local Government Code Chapter 271, Subchapter B does not apply to a competitive bidding process under this policy.

*Education Code 44.0351*

**Opening Bids**

Bids may be opened only by a board at a public meeting or by an officer or employee of a district at or in an office of the district. A bid that has been opened may not be changed for the purpose of correcting an error in the bid price. *Local Gov't Code 271.026*

A board shall have the right to reject any and all bids. *Local Gov't Code 271.027(a)*

**Safety Record**

In determining who is a responsible bidder, a board may take into account the safety record of the bidder; of the firm, corporation,

partnership, or institution represented by the bidder; or of anyone acting for such firm, corporation, partnership, or institution, provided that:

1. The board has adopted a written definition and criteria for accurately determining the safety record of the bidder.
2. The board has given notice in the bid specifications that the safety record of a bidder may be considered in determining the bidder's responsibility.
3. The determinations are not arbitrary and capricious.

*Local Gov't Code 271.0275*

**Identical Bids**

If a district receives two or more bids from responsible bidders that are identical, in nature and amount, as the lowest and best bids, it shall select only one bidder from the identical bids.

If only one of the bidders submitting identical bids is a resident of a district, that bidder shall be selected. If two or more such bidders are residents of a district, one shall be selected by the casting of lots. In all other cases, one of the identical bids shall be selected by the casting of lots.

A board shall prescribe the manner of casting lots and shall be present when the lots are cast. All qualified bidders or their representatives may be present at the casting of lots.

*Local Gov't Code 271.901*

**Competitive Sealed Proposals**

In selecting a vendor through competitive sealed proposals as authorized by Education Code 44.031(a)(2), a school district shall follow the procedures prescribed below.

**Request for Proposals**

The district shall prepare a request for competitive sealed proposals that includes information that vendors may require to respond to the request. The district shall state in the request for proposals the selection criteria that will be used in selecting the successful offeror.

**Opening Proposals**

The district shall receive, publicly open, and read aloud the names of the offerors and, if any are required to be stated, all prices stated in each proposal. Not later than the 45th day after the date on which the proposals are opened, the district shall evaluate and rank each proposal submitted in relation to the published selection criteria.

**Selection**

The district shall select the offeror that offers the best value for the district based on the published selection criteria and on its ranking evaluation. The district shall first attempt to negotiate a contract

with the selected offeror. The district may discuss with the selected offeror options for a scope or time modification and any price change associated with the modification. If the district is unable to negotiate a satisfactory contract with the selected offeror, the district shall, formally and in writing, end negotiations with that offeror and proceed to the next offeror in the order of the selection ranking until a contract is reached or all proposals are rejected.

Best Value  
Determination

In determining the best value for the district, the district is not restricted to considering price alone but may consider any other factors stated in the selection criteria.

*Education Code 44.0352*

**Interlocal  
Agreements**

To increase efficiency and effectiveness, a district may contract or agree with other local governments and with state agencies, including the comptroller, to perform some of its purchasing functions. *Gov't Code 791.001, .011, .025*

An interlocal contract must be authorized by a board and the governing body of each contracting party; must state the purpose, terms, rights, and duties of the contracting parties; and must specify that each party paying for the performance of governmental functions or services shall make those payments from current revenues available to the paying party.

An interlocal contractual payment must be in an amount that fairly compensates the performing party for the services or functions performed under the contract. The contract may be renewed and may have a specified term of years.

*Gov't Code 791.011(d)–(f), (i)*

A district may agree with another local government, including a nonprofit corporation that is created and operated to provide one or more governmental functions and services, or with the state or a state agency, including the comptroller, to purchase goods and services reasonably required for the installation, operation, or maintenance of the goods. Such an agreement may not, however, apply to services provided by firefighters, police officers, or emergency medical personnel.

A district that purchases goods and services by agreement with another local government or with the state or state agency satisfies the requirement to seek competitive bids for the purchase of goods and services.

*Gov't Code 791.025(b)–(c); Atty. Gen. Op. JC-37 (1999)*

A district may not enter into a contract to purchase construction-related goods or services through a purchasing cooperative in an amount greater than \$50,000 unless a person designated by the district certifies in writing that:

1. The project for which the construction-related goods or services are being procured does not require the preparation of plans and specifications under Chapter 1001 or 1051, Occupations Code; or
2. The plans and specifications required under Chapters 1001 and 1051, Occupations Code, have been prepared.

“Purchasing cooperative” means a group purchasing organization that governmental entities join as members and the managing entity of which receives fees from members or vendors.

*Gov't Code 791.011(j)*

**State Purchasing Program**

Purchasing services performed for a district by the comptroller shall include:

1. The extension of state contract prices to a district when the comptroller considers it feasible.
2. Solicitation of bids on items desired by a district if the solicitation is considered feasible by the comptroller and is desired by the district.
3. Provision of information and technical assistance to a district about the purchasing program.

The comptroller may charge a district its actual costs in providing purchasing services.

*Local Gov't Code 271.082*

**District Requirements**

A district may participate in the purchasing program, including participation in purchases that use the reverse auction procedure, by filing with the comptroller a resolution adopted by the board requesting that the district be allowed to participate on a voluntary basis, to the extent the comptroller deems feasible, and stating that the board shall:

1. Designate an official to act for the district in all matters relating to the program, including the purchase of items from the vendor under any contract.
2. Direct the decisions of its representative.
3. Be responsible for:

- a. Submitting requisitions to the commission under contract(s) and for payment directly to the vendor; and
  - b. Electronically sending purchase orders directly to vendors, or complying with procedures governing a reverse auction purchase, and electronically sending the comptroller reports on actual purchases.
4. Be responsible for the vendor's compliance with all conditions of delivery and quality of the purchased item.

A purchase made through participation in this program meets any state requirement to seek competitive bids for the purchase of the item.

*Local Gov't Code 271.083*

**Multiple Award  
Contract Schedule**

The comptroller shall develop a schedule of multiple award contracts that have been previously awarded using a competitive process by the federal government or any other governmental entity in any state. *Gov't Code 2155.502*

A district may purchase goods or services directly from a vendor under a contract listed on a schedule. A district contracting for the purchase of an automated information system under a contract listed on a schedule shall comply with Government Code 2157.068(e-1) (regarding purchase of information technology commodity items) [see Automated Information System, above]. An authorized purchase satisfies any requirement of state law relating to competitive bids or proposals.

The price listed for a good or service under a multiple award contract is a maximum price. A district may negotiate a lower price for goods or services under a contract listed on a schedule.

*Gov't Code 2155.504*

**Cooperative  
Purchasing Program**

A district may participate in a cooperative purchasing program with another local government of this state or another state or with a local cooperative organization of this state or another state. If a district does so, it may sign an agreement with another participating local government or a local cooperative stating that the district will:

1. Designate a person to act on behalf of the district in all matters relating to the program.
2. Make payments to another participating local government or local cooperative organization or directly under a contract, as provided in the agreement.
3. Be responsible for the vendor's compliance.

If a district participates in a cooperative purchasing program, it satisfies any law requiring it to seek competitive bids.

*Local Gov't Code 271.102; Atty. Gen. Op. JC-37 (1999)*

**Contract-Related Fee**

A school district that enters into a purchasing contract valued at \$25,000 or more under Education Code 44.031(a)(5) (interlocal contract), under Local Government Code Chapter 271, Subchapter F (cooperative purchasing program), or under any other cooperative purchasing program authorized for school districts by law shall document any contract-related fee, including any management fee, and the purpose of each fee under the contract.

The amount, purpose, and disposition of any fee described above must be presented in a written report and submitted annually in an open meeting of the board. The written report must appear as an agenda item. The commissioner of education may audit the written report.

*Education Code 44.0331*

**Reverse Auction**

A district that uses the reverse auction procedure must include in the procedure a notice provision and other provisions necessary to produce a method of purchasing that is advantageous to the district and fair to vendors. *Local Gov't Code 271.906(b)*

Reverse auction procedure means:

1. A real-time bidding process usually lasting less than one hour and taking place at a previously scheduled time and internet location, in which multiple suppliers, anonymous to each other, submit bids to provide the designated goods or services; or
2. A bidding process usually lasting less than two weeks and taking place during a previously scheduled period and at a previously scheduled internet location, in which multiple suppliers, anonymous to each other, submit bids to provide the designated goods or services.

*Gov't Code 2155.062(d)*

**Commitment of  
Current Revenue**

A contract for the acquisition, including lease, of real or personal property is a commitment of a district's current revenue only, provided the contract contains either or both of the following provisions:

1. Retains to the board the continuing right to terminate the contract at the expiration of each budget period during the term of the contract.

2. Is conditioned on a best efforts attempt by the board to obtain and appropriate funds for payment of the contract.

*Local Gov't Code 271.903*

**Change Orders**

If a change in plans or specifications is necessary after the performance of a contract is begun or if it is necessary to decrease or increase the quantity of work to be performed or of materials, equipment, or supplies to be furnished, the district may approve change orders making the changes. The district may grant general authority to an administrative official to approve the change orders.

The total contract price may not be increased because of the changes unless additional money for increased costs is approved for that purpose from available money or is provided for by the authorization of the issuance of time warrants.

A contract with an original contract price of \$1 million or more may not be increased by more than 25 percent. If a change order for a contract with an original contract price of less than \$1 million increases the contract amount to \$1 million or more, the total of the subsequent change orders may not increase the revised contract amount by more than 25 percent of the original contract price.

*Education Code 44.0411*

**Energy or Water Conservation Measures**

A district may contract for energy or water conservation measures. Such a contract shall be let according to the procedures established for professional services by Government Code 2254.004.

A board shall establish a long-range energy plan to reduce a district's annual electric consumption by five percent beginning with the 2008 state fiscal year and consume electricity in subsequent fiscal years in accordance with the district's energy plan.

*Education Code 44.901--902* [See policy CL for legal requirements pertaining to such contracts and plans.]

**Recycled Products**

A district shall give preference in purchasing to products made of recycled materials if the products meet applicable specifications as to quantity and quality. A district shall regularly review and revise its purchasing procedures and specifications for purchase of goods, supplies, equipment, and materials in order to:

1. Eliminate procedures and specifications that explicitly discriminate against products made of recycled materials.
2. Encourage the use of products made of recycled materials.



3. Ensure to the maximum extent economically feasible that the district purchase products that may be recycled when they have served their intended use.

A district may seek an exemption from compliance if it has a population of less than 5,000 within its geographic boundaries and demonstrates to the Water Commission that compliance would work a hardship on the district.

*Health and Safety Code 361.426*

**Agricultural Products**

If the cost and quality are equal, a district shall give preference in purchasing to agricultural products, including textiles and other similar products, that are produced, processed, or grown in Texas. "Processed" means canning, freezing, drying, juicing, preserving, or any other act that changes the form of a good from its natural state to another form. If Texas agricultural products are not equal in cost and quality to other agricultural products, a district shall give preference in purchasing to agricultural products produced, processed, or grown in the United States, if the cost and quality of the U.S. and foreign products are equal.

A district may not adopt product purchasing specifications that unnecessarily exclude agricultural products produced, processed, or grown in Texas.

Vegetation for Landscaping

If cost is equal and the quality is not inferior, a district shall give preference to Texas vegetation when it purchases vegetation for landscaping purposes.

*Education Code 44.042*

**Bus Purchase or Lease**

Each contract proposed for the purchase or lease of one or more school buses, including a lease with an option to purchase, shall be submitted to competitive bidding when the contract is valued at \$20,000 or more. *Education Code 44.031(l)* [See CNB]

**Right to Work**

While engaged in procuring goods and services or awarding a contract, a district:

1. May not consider whether a vendor is a member of or has another relationship with any organization; and
2. Shall ensure that its bid specifications and any subsequent contract or other agreement do not deny or diminish the right of a person to work because of the person's membership or other relationship status with respect to any organization.

*Education Code 44.043*

**Lobbying  
Restriction—  
Tobacco Education  
Grant Funds**

A district may not spend grant funds it receives from the Permanent Fund for Tobacco Education and Enforcement to pay:

1. Lobbying expenses incurred by the district;
2. A person or entity that is required under Government Code Chapter 305 to register as a lobbyist with the Texas Ethics Commission;
3. Any partner, employee, employer, relative, contractor, consultant, or related entity of a person or entity of a registered lobbyist (as described in item 2); or
4. A person or entity who has been hired to represent associations or other entities for the purpose of affecting the outcome of legislation, agency rules, ordinances, or other government policies.

*Gov't Code 403.1067*

**Criminal History**

For provisions pertaining to criminal history record information on contractors, see CJA(LEGAL).

**Impermissible  
Practices**

A board member, employee, or agent shall not, with criminal negligence, make or authorize separate, sequential, or component purchases to avoid the purchasing requirements set out in Education Code 44.031. An officer or employee shall not knowingly violate Education Code 44.031 in any other manner.

“Component purchases” means purchases of the component parts of an item that in normal purchasing practices would be made in one purchase. “Separate purchases” means purchases, made separately, of items that in normal purchasing practices would be made in one purchase. “Sequential purchases” means purchases, over a period, of items that in normal purchasing practices would be made in one purchase.

Violation of this provision is a Class B misdemeanor and an offense involving moral turpitude, conviction of which shall result in removal from office or dismissal from employment. A board member who is convicted of a violation of this provision is considered to have committed official misconduct and for four years after the date of final conviction, the removed person is ineligible to be appointed or elected to public office in Texas, is ineligible to be employed by or act as an agent for the state or a political subdivision, and is ineligible to receive any compensation through a contract with the state or a political subdivision. [See BBC]

*Education Code 44.032*

**Injunction**

A court may enjoin performance of a contract made in violation of Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B. A county attorney, district attorney, criminal district attorney, citizen of the county in which a district is located, or any interested party may bring an action for an injunction. A party who prevails in an action brought under this subsection is entitled to reasonable attorney's fees as approved by the court. *Education Code 44.032(f)*

**Purchasing  
Authority**

The Board delegates to the Superintendent or designee the authority to make budgeted purchases for goods or services. However, any single, budgeted purchase of goods or services that costs \$50,000 or more, regardless of whether the goods or services are competitively purchased, shall require Board approval before a transaction may take place.

Purchasing Method

The Board delegates to the Superintendent or designee the authority to determine the method of purchasing in accordance with CH(LEGAL) or CBB(LEGAL), as appropriate.

*Competitive  
Bidding*

If competitive bidding is chosen as the purchasing method, the Superintendent or designee shall prepare bid specifications. All bids shall be in accordance with administrative regulations, and the submission of any electronic bids shall also be in accordance with Board-adopted rules. All bidders shall be invited to attend the bid opening. Any bid may be withdrawn prior to the scheduled time for opening. Bids received after the specified time shall not be considered.

The District may reject any and all bids in accordance with state or federal law, as applicable.

The Board shall accept the bid it deems to be in the best interest of the District. Quality and suitability of the product, and not price alone, shall be considered in the acceptance of bids. Consideration shall also be given to the bidder's references and record for responsibility, knowledge of the product, and service.

*Competitive  
Sealed Proposals*

If competitive sealed proposals are chosen as the purchasing method, the Superintendent or designee shall prepare the request for proposals and/or specifications for items to be purchased. All proposals shall be in accordance with administrative regulations, and the submission of any electronic proposals shall also be in accordance with Board-adopted rules. Proposals received after the specified time shall not be considered. Proposals shall be opened at the time specified, and all proposers shall be invited to attend the proposal opening. Proposals may be withdrawn prior to the scheduled time of opening. Changes in the content of a proposal, and in prices, may be negotiated after proposals are opened.

The District may reject any and all proposals in accordance with state or federal law, as applicable.

Electronic Bids or  
Proposals

Bids or proposals that the District has chosen to accept through electronic transmission shall be administered in accordance with Board-adopted rules. Such rules shall safeguard the integrity of the competitive procurement process; ensure the identification, security, and confidentiality of electronic bids or proposals; and ensure

PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION

CH  
(LOCAL)

that the electronic bids or proposals remain effectively unopened until the proper time.

**Responsibility for Debts**

The Board shall assume responsibility for debts incurred in the name of the District so long as those debts are for purchases made in accordance with the adopted budget, state law, Board policy, and the District's purchasing procedures. [See CE] The Board shall not be responsible for debts incurred by persons or organizations not directly under Board control. Persons making unauthorized purchases shall assume full responsibility for all such debts.

**Purchase Commitments**

All purchase commitments shall be made by the Superintendent or designee in accordance with administrative procedures, including the District's purchasing procedures.

**Personal Purchases**

District employees shall not be permitted to make purchases for personal use through the District's business office.

**Payment Due**

Except as provided below, a payment by a district under a contract executed on or after September 1, 1987, is overdue on the 31st day after the later of:

1. The date the district receives the goods under the contract;
2. The date the performance of the service under the contract is completed; or
3. The date the district receives an invoice for the goods or services.

**Exception**

A payment under a contract executed on or after September 1, 1993, owed by a district whose board meets only once a month or less frequently is overdue on the 46th day after the later event described above. The renewal, amendment, or extension of a contract executed on or before September 1, 1993, is considered to be the execution of a new contract.

*Gov't Code 2251.021*

**Interest**

A payment begins to accrue interest on the date the payment becomes overdue. The rate of interest that accrues on an overdue payment is the rate in effect on September 1 of the fiscal year in which the payment becomes overdue. The rate in effect on September 1 is equal to the sum of one percent and the prime rate as published in the Wall Street Journal on the first day of July of the preceding fiscal year that does not fall on a Saturday or Sunday.

Interest on an overdue payment stops accruing on the date a district or vendor mails or electronically transmits the payment.

The unpaid balance of a partial payment made within the prescribed period accrues interest, unless the balance is in dispute.

*Gov't Code 2251.025, .029*

A district shall:

1. Compute interest imposed on the district.
2. Pay the interest at the time payment is made on the principal.
3. Submit the interest payment with the net amount due for the goods or service.

A district may not:

1. Require a vendor to petition, bill, or wait an additional day to receive the interest due.

2. Require a vendor or subcontractor to agree to waive the vendor's or subcontractor's right to interest as a condition of the contract.

*Gov't Code 2251.027*

**Early Payment Discount**

A district should take advantage of an offer for an early payment discount. A district may not take an early payment discount unless the district makes a full payment within the discount period. If a district takes an early payment discount later, the unpaid balance accrues interest beginning on the date the discount offer expires.

*Gov't Code 2251.030*

**Exceptions**

These provisions do not apply to a payment made by a district, vendor, or subcontractor if:

1. There is a bona fide dispute between the district and a vendor, contractor, subcontractor, or supplier about the goods delivered or the service performed that causes the payment to be late;
2. There is a bona fide dispute between a vendor and a subcontractor or between a subcontractor and its supplier about the goods delivered or the services performed that causes the payment to be late;
3. The terms of a federal contract, grant, regulation, or statute prevent the district from making a timely payment with federal funds; or
4. The invoice is not mailed to the person to whom it is addressed in strict accordance with any instruction on the purchase order relating to the payment.

*Gov't Code 2251.002*

**Disputed Payment**

A district shall notify a vendor of an error in an invoice submitted for payment by the vendor not later than the 21st day after the date the district receives the invoice. If a dispute is resolved in favor of the vendor, the vendor is entitled to receive interest on the unpaid balance beginning on the date that the payment for the invoice is overdue. If a dispute is resolved in favor of the district, the vendor shall submit a corrected invoice that must be paid in accordance with Government Code 2251.021 [see Payment Due above]. The unpaid balance accrues interest if the corrected invoice is not paid by the appropriate date. *Gov't Code 2251.042*

**Vendor Remedy for Nonpayment**

A vendor may suspend performance required under a contract with a district if the district does not pay the vendor an undisputed amount within the time limits provided above, and the vendor gives



the district written notice informing the district that payment has not been received and stating the intent of the vendor to suspend performance for nonpayment.

The vendor may not suspend performance before the tenth day after the date the vendor gives this notice.

A vendor who suspends performance is not:

1. Required to supply further labor, services, or materials until the vendor is paid the amount provided for under Government Code Chapter 2251, plus costs for demobilization and remobilization; or
2. Responsible for damages resulting from suspending work if the district with which the vendor has the contract has not notified the vendor in writing before performance is suspended that payment has been made or that a bona fide dispute for payment exists.

A notification that a bona fide dispute for payment exists must include a list of the specific reasons for nonpayment. If a reason specified is that labor, services, or materials provided by the vendor or the vendor's subcontractor are not provided in compliance with the contract, the vendor is entitled to a reasonable opportunity to cure the noncompliance of the listed items, or offer a reasonable amount to compensate for listed items for which noncompliance cannot be promptly cured.

*Gov't Code 2251.051*

<b>Cash Purchases with Available Funds</b>	The Public Property Finance Act (Local Government Code Chapter 271, Subchapter A) does not include cash purchases of real property made with moneys from available funds. <i>Bandera v. Hamilton</i> , 2 S.W.3d 367 (Tex. App.—San Antonio 1999, pet. denied)
<b>Public Property Finance Act</b> Definitions	<p>“Contract” means an agreement entered into under the Public Property Finance Act but does not mean a contract solely for the construction of improvements to real property.</p> <p>“Improvement” means a permanent building, structure, fixture, or fence that is erected on or affixed to land but does not include a transportable building or structure whether or not it is affixed to land.</p> <p>“Real property” means land, improvement, or an estate or interest in real property, other than a mortgage or deed of trust creating a lien on property or an interest securing payment or performance of an obligation in real property.</p> <p><i>Local Gov’t Code 271.003(2), (10), (11)</i></p>
Proposed Contract	The board may execute, perform, and make payments under a contract for the use or purchase or other acquisition of real property or an improvement to real property. If the board proposes to enter into such a contract, the board shall publish notice of intent to enter into the contract not less than 60 days before the date set to approve execution of the contract in a newspaper with general circulation in the district. The notice must summarize the major provisions of the proposed contract. The notice shall estimate the construction and other costs, but the board shall not publish the first advertisement for bids for construction of improvements until 60 days has expired from the publication of the notice of intent to enter into the contract. <i>Local Gov’t Code 271.004(a)</i>
Petition and Referendum	If, within 60 days of the date of publication of the notice of intent required above, a written petition signed by a least five percent of the registered voters of the district is filed with the board requesting that the board order a referendum on the question of whether the contract should be approved, the board may not approve the contract or publish the first advertisement for bids for construction of improvements unless the question is approved by a majority of the votes received in a referendum ordered and held on the question. The referendum shall be held in accordance with the applicable provisions of the Election Code. The requirement that an election must be held on a uniform election date does not apply to an election held under Local Government Code 271.004. <i>Local Gov’t Code 271.004(b)–(c)</i>

PURCHASING AND ACQUISITION  
REAL PROPERTY AND IMPROVEMENTS

CHG  
(LEGAL)

Submission to Attorney General	A lease-purchase contract entered into by the district under Local Government Code 271.004 and the records relating to its execution must be submitted to the attorney general for examination as to their validity. If the attorney general finds that the contract has been authorized in accordance with the law, the attorney general shall approve them, and the comptroller shall register the contract. Following approval and registration, the contract is incontestable and is a binding obligation according to its terms. <i>Local Gov't Code 271.004(g)–(i)</i>
District Obligation	A contract under Local Government Code 271.004 is a special obligation of a district if ad valorem taxes are not pledged to the payment of the contract. If the contract provides that payments by the district are to be made from maintenance taxes previously approved by voters of the district and are subject to annual appropriation or are paid from a source other than ad valorem taxes, the payments under the contract shall not be considered indebtedness under Tax Code 26.04(c). All or part of the district's obligation may be evidenced by one or more negotiable promissory notes. <i>Local Gov't Code 271.004 (d)–(f)</i>
<b>State Assistance— Instructional Facilities</b>	A district may receive state assistance in connection with a lease-purchase agreement concerning an instructional facility in accordance with Education Code 46.004. A lease purchase agreement must be for a term of at least eight years to be eligible to be paid with state and local funds under Education Code Chapter 46, Subchapter A. <i>Education Code 46.004; 19 TAC 61.1032</i>
<b>Eminent Domain</b>	<p>A district may, by the exercise of the right of eminent domain, acquire the fee simple title to real property on which to construct school buildings or for any other public use necessary for the district. <i>Education Code 11.155(a)</i></p> <p>[For information regarding athletic stadium authorities and eminent domain, see CCE.]</p> <p>A district may not take private property through the use of eminent domain if the taking confers a private benefit on a particular private party through the use of the property, is for a public use that is merely a pretext to confer a private benefit on a particular private party, or is not for a public use. <i>Gov't Code 2206.001(b)</i></p>
Procedures	The procedures in the Truth in Condemnation Procedures Act, Government Code Chapter 2206, Subchapter B, apply to the use of eminent domain under the laws of this state by a governmental entity. <i>Gov't Code 2206.052</i>

Exercise of the eminent domain authority in all cases is governed by Property Code Chapter 21, Subchapter B. *Property Code 21.011*

Reporting to  
Comptroller

Not later than February 1 of each year, a district shall submit to the comptroller a report containing records and other information specified by Government Code Chapter 2206, Subchapter D for the purpose of providing the comptroller with information to maintain the eminent domain database under Government Code 2206.153. The district shall submit the report in a form and in the manner prescribed by the comptroller.

In addition to the required annual report, the district shall report to the comptroller any changes to the district's reported eminent domain authority information not later than the 90th day after the date on which the change occurred.

*Penalties for  
Noncompliance*

If a district does not timely submit a report that complies with these provisions, the comptroller shall provide written notice to the district under Government Code 2206.155(a).

If the district does not report the required information not later than the 30th day after the date the comptroller provides notice, the district is subject to penalties as prescribed by Government Code 2206.155.

The reporting, failure to report, or late submission of a report by a district does not affect the entity's authority to exercise the power of eminent domain.

*Gov't Code 2206.154(a), (c), .155, .156*

**Definitions**

For purposes of this policy:

1. "Bus" means a motor vehicle used to transport persons and designed to accommodate more than ten passengers, including the operator.
2. "Passenger car" means a motor vehicle, other than a motorcycle, used to transport persons and designed to accommodate ten or fewer passengers, including the operator.
3. "Passenger van" means a motor vehicle, other than a motorcycle or passenger car, used to transport persons and designed to transport 15 or fewer passengers, including the driver.
4. "School activity bus" means a bus designed to accommodate more than 15 passengers, including the operator, that is owned, operated, rented, or leased by a district and is used to transport public school students on a school-related activity trip, other than on routes to and from school. The term does not include a chartered bus, a bus operated by a mass transit authority, a school bus, or a multi-function school activity bus.
5. "School bus" means a motor vehicle that was manufactured in compliance with the federal motor vehicle safety standards for school buses in effect on the date of manufacture and that is used to transport preprimary, primary, or secondary students on a route to and from school or on a school-related activity trip other than on routes to and from school. The term does not include a school-chartered bus or a bus operated by a mass transit authority.
6. "Motor bus" means a vehicle designed to transport more than 15 passengers, including the driver.

*Education Code 34.003(d), (e); Transp. Code 541.201(3)(A), (12), (15), (16)*

**Authority**

A district may establish and operate an economical public school transportation system in the district or outside the district, if the district enters into an interlocal contract as provided by Government Code Chapter 791. In establishing and operating the transportation system, a board shall employ bus drivers certified in accordance with standards and qualifications adopted by the Department of Public Safety. *Education Code 34.007*

**Transportation  
Allotment for Eligible  
Students**

Each district operating a regular transportation system is entitled to an allotment based on the daily cost per regular eligible student of operating and maintaining the regular transportation system and the linear density of that system. *Education Code 42.155(c)*

“Regular eligible student” means a student who resides two or more miles from the student’s campus of regular attendance, measured along the shortest route that may be traveled on public roads, and who is not classified as a student eligible for special education services. *Education Code 42.155(b)(1)*

The commissioner of education may not reduce the allotment because a district provides transportation for an eligible student to and from a child-care facility or a grandparent’s residence instead of the student’s residence, if the transportation is provided within the approved routes of the district for the school the student attends. *Education Code 42.155(k)*

A board may require payment of a reasonable fee for transportation to and from school of a student who lives within two miles of the school the student attends, except that a board may not charge a fee for transportation for which a district receives funds under Education Code 42.155(d). *Education Code 11.158(a)(14)*

If the district does not receive any funds under Education Code 42.155 and does not participate in a county transportation system for which an allotment is provided under Education Code 42.155(i), the board may require payment of a reasonable fee for the transportation of a student to and from the school the student attends. *Education Code 11.158(a)(16)*

**Hazardous  
Conditions or High  
Risk of Violence**

A district may apply for and on approval of the commissioner receive an additional amount of up to ten percent of its regular transportation allotment to be used for the transportation of children living within two miles of the school they attend who would be subject to hazardous traffic conditions or a high risk of violence if they walked to school. *Education Code 42.155(d); 19 TAC 61.1016*

Definitions

“Hazardous traffic condition” means an area within two miles of a campus where no walkway is provided and children must walk along or cross a freeway or expressway, an underpass, an overpass or a bridge, an uncontrolled major traffic artery, an industrial or commercial area, or another comparable condition.

“Area presenting a high risk of violence” means an area within two miles of a campus that law enforcement records indicate presents a high incidence of violent crimes.

*19 TAC 61.1016(b)*

Community Walking  
Transportation  
Programs

A district may use all or part of any additional funds received to support community walking transportation programs, including walking school bus programs, provided that the district requires each supported program to submit a financial report each semester

that covers services provided by the program for the benefit of the district. *Education Code 42.155(d-2)*

**Eligibility**

A district or county is eligible to report hazardous area service annual mileage in the Foundation School Program (FSP) transportation application if the district submits to TEA a policy adopted by the board that:

1. Explains the specific hazardous traffic conditions or areas presenting high risk for violence that apply to the district and exist within two miles of its campuses; and
2. If a district elects to implement community walking transportation programs or innovative school safety projects, requires such district-supported community walking transportation programs or innovative school safety projects to:
  - a. Utilize trained adults with current background checks to either walk students to their home or school or to stand guard along safe routes; and
  - b. Provide financial reports to the district each semester.

*19 TAC 61.1016(c)*

**Reporting**

A district is required to submit a hazardous area policy prior to the start of the school year and to report annual hazardous area service mileage by August 1 of each school year on the home-to-school/school-to-home section of the FSP transportation route services report. Districts requesting funds for an area presenting a high risk of violence must provide to TEA, contemporaneously with the explanation required at Eligibility above, consolidated law enforcement records that document violent crimes identified by reporting agencies within the relevant jurisdiction. *19 TAC 61.1016(d)*

**Career and  
Technology Program**

The cost of transporting career and technology education students from one campus to another inside a district or from a sending district to another secondary public school for a career and technology program or an area career and technology school, or to an approved postsecondary institution under a contract for instruction approved by TEA shall be reimbursed based on the number of actual miles traveled times the district's official extracurricular travel per mile rate as set by the board and approved by TEA. *Education Code 42.155(f)*

**Bus Operation**

A person may not operate a school bus if:

1. The door of the school bus is open; or
2. The number of passengers on the bus is greater than the manufacturer's design capacity for the bus.



An operator of a school bus, while operating the bus, shall prohibit a passenger from:

1. Standing in the bus; or
2. Sitting on the floor of the bus or in any location that is not designed as a seat.

*Transp. Code 545.426*

**Transporting  
Students to School**

School buses or mass transit authority buses shall be used for the transportation of students to and from schools on routes having ten or more students. Passenger cars may be used on routes having fewer than ten students. *Education Code 34.003(a)*

Bus Passes or  
Cards

A school district may use the state transportation allotment to provide a bus pass or card for another transportation system to each student who is eligible to use the regular transportation system of the district but for whom the regular transportation system of the district is not a feasible method of providing transportation. *Education Code 42.155(l)*

Designation of  
Child-Care Facility  
or Grandparent's  
Residence

A board, after determining eligibility for transportation services, shall allow a parent to designate a child-care facility or the residence of a grandparent of the child instead of the child's residence as the regular location for purposes of obtaining transportation under the system to and from the child's school, if the location is an approved stop on an approved route. *Education Code 34.007(b)(2)*

"Child-care facility" means a facility licensed, certified, or registered by the Department of Family and Protective Services to provide assessment, care, training, education, custody, treatment, or supervision for a child who is not related by blood, marriage, or adoption to the owner or operator of the facility for all or part of the 24-hour day, whether or not the facility is operated for profit or charges for the services it offers. *Human Resources Code 42.002(3)*

Transportation of  
Homeless Students

As a condition of receiving funds under the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act, a district shall adopt policies and practices to ensure that transportation is provided, at the request of the parent or guardian (or in the case of an unaccompanied youth, at the request of the homeless liaison [see FFC]) to and from the school of origin, as follows:

1. If the child continues to live in the area served by the district in which the school of origin is located, the district of origin will provide the child's transportation to and from the school of origin.

2. If the child's living arrangements in the area served by the district of origin terminate and the child, though continuing his or her education in the school of origin, begins living in an area served by another district, the district of origin and the district in which the child is living shall agree upon a method to apportion the responsibility and costs for providing the child with transportation to and from the school of origin. If the districts are unable to agree, the responsibility and costs shall be shared equally.

*42 U.S.C. 11432(g)(1)(J)(iii)(I), (II) [See FDC]*

Transportation of  
Students in Foster  
Care

A district receiving Title 1, Part A funds must collaborate with the state or local child welfare agency to develop and implement clear written procedures governing how transportation to maintain children in foster care in their school of origin when in their best interest will be provided, arranged, and funded for the duration of the time in foster care. These procedures shall:

1. Ensure that children in foster care needing transportation to the school of origin will promptly receive transportation in a cost-effective manner and in accordance with 42 U.S.C. 675(4)(A); and
2. Ensure that, if there are additional costs incurred in providing transportation to maintain children in foster care in their schools of origin, the district will provide transportation to the school of origin if:
  - a. The local child welfare agency agrees to reimburse the district for the cost of such transportation;
  - b. The district agrees to pay the cost of transportation; or
  - c. The district and the local welfare agency agree to share the cost of such transportation.

*20 U.S.C. 6312(c)(5) [See FD]*

School Activities

When transporting students in connection with school activities other than on routes to and from school:

1. Only school buses or motor buses may be used to transport 15 or more students; and
2. Passenger cars or passenger vans may be used to transport fewer than 15 students.

*Education Code 34.003(b)*

In all circumstances in which passenger cars or passenger vans are used to transport students, the operator of the vehicle shall ensure that the number of passengers does not exceed the designed capacity of the vehicle and that each passenger is secured by a safety belt. *Education Code 34.003(c)*

**Accelerated  
Instruction Programs**

A district shall provide students required to attend the accelerated programs described in policy code EIE with transportation to those programs if the programs occur outside of regular school hours. *Education Code 28.0211(j)*

**Transportation  
Company or System**

A board may contract with a mass transit authority, commercial transportation company, or juvenile board for all or any part of a district's public school transportation if the authority, company, or board:

1. Requires its school bus drivers to have the qualifications required by and to be certified in accordance with standards established by the Department of Public Safety; and
2. Uses only those school buses or mass transit authority buses in transporting 15 or more students that meet or exceed safety standards for school buses established under Education Code 34.002.

A mass transit authority contracting under this provision for daily transportation of pre-primary, primary, secondary students to or from school shall conduct, in a manner and on a schedule approved by the board, the following education programs:

1. A program to inform the public that public school students will be riding on the authority's or company's buses;
2. A program to educate drivers of the buses to be used under the contract of the special needs and problems of public school students riding on the buses; and
3. A program to educate public school students on bus riding safety and any special considerations arising from the use of the authority's or company's buses.

A board may supplement the state transportation cost allotment with local funds necessary to provide complete transportation services.

*Education Code 34.008*

[For provisions pertaining to criminal history record information on contractors providing transportation services, see CJA(LEGAL).]

**Texas Department of  
Agriculture Authority**

The Texas Department of Agriculture (TDA) administers federal and state nutrition programs, including the National School Lunch Program (NSLP) under 42 U.S.C. Section 1751 et seq., and the School Breakfast Program (SBP) under 42 U.S.C. Section 1773. *Agriculture Code 12.0025*

---

**Note:** Regulations applicable to federal nutrition programs are found at the following:

7 C.F.R. 210: National School Lunch Program

7 C.F.R. 215: Special Milk Program for Children

7 C.F.R. 220: School Breakfast Program

7 C.F.R. 225: Summer Food Service Program

7 C.F.R. 245: Free and Reduced Price Eligibility

---

**Program Compliance**

TDA shall require that school food authorities (SFAs) comply with the applicable provisions 7 C.F.R. Part 210. TDA shall ensure compliance through audits, administrative reviews, technical assistance, training guidance materials or by other means. *7 C.F.R. 210.19(a)(3)*

[For the definition of “school food authority,” see COA(LEGAL).]

**Administrative  
Review**

TDA must conduct administrative reviews of all SFAs participating in the NSLP (including the Afterschool Snacks and the Seamless Summer Option) and SBP at least once during a 3-year review cycle, provided that each SFA is reviewed at least once every 4 years.

“Administrative reviews” means the comprehensive off-site and/or on-site evaluation of all SFAs participating in the specified programs. The term administrative review is used to reflect a review of both critical and general areas in accordance with 7 C.F.R. 210.18(g) and (h), as applicable for each reviewed program, and includes other areas of program operations determined by TDA to be important to program performance.

*7 C.F.R. 210.18*

**School Nutrition  
Program  
Professional  
Standards**

An SFA that operates the NSLP or the SBP must establish and implement professional standards for school nutrition program directors, managers, and staff.

Minimum Standards  
for School Nutrition  
Program Directors

Each SFA must ensure that all newly hired school nutrition program directors meet minimum hiring standards and ensure that all new and existing directors have completed the minimum annual training/education requirements for school nutrition program directors, as set forth in 7 C.F.R. 210.30.

*7 C.F.R. 210.30*

**Exempt Fundraisers**

Schools that participate in the NSLP or SBP may sell food and beverages that do not meet nutritional standards outlined in 7 C.F.R. Parts 210 and 220 as part of a fundraiser, during the school day, for up to six days per school year on each school campus, provided that no specially exempted fundraiser foods or beverages may be sold in competition with school meals in the food service area during the meal service. *4 TAC 26.2*

Definitions

“School day” means the midnight before, to 30 minutes after the end of the official school day.

“School campus” means all areas of the property under the jurisdiction of the school that are accessible to students during the school day.

*4 TAC 26.1*

**Unpaid Meal  
Charges**

State Law

The board of a district that allows students to use a prepaid meal card or account to purchase meals served at schools in the district shall adopt a grace period policy regarding the use of the cards or accounts. The policy:

1. Must allow a student whose meal card or account balance is exhausted or insufficient to continue, for a period determined by the board, to purchase meals by:
  - a. Accumulating a negative balance on the student’s card or account; or
  - b. Otherwise receiving an extension of credit from the district;
2. Must require the district to notify the parent of or person standing in parental relation to the student that the student’s meal card or account balance is exhausted;
3. May not permit the district to charge a fee or interest in connection with meals purchased under item 1, above; and
4. May permit the district to set a schedule for repayment on the account balance as part of the notice to the parent or person standing in parental relation to the student.

*Education Code 33.908*

Federal Law

An SFA operating a NSLP and/or SBP must:

1. Have a written and clearly communicated meal charge policy in order to ensure a consistent and transparent approach to the issue of how students who pay the full or reduced price cost of a reimbursable meal are impacted by having insufficient funds on hand or in their account to purchase a meal.
2. Include policies regarding the collection of delinquent meal charge debt in the written meal charge policy.
3. Ensure that the policy is provided in writing to all households at the start of each school year and to households that transfer to the school during the school year.
4. Provide the meal charge policy to all school or SFA-level staff responsible for policy enforcement, including school food service professionals responsible for collecting payment for meals at the point of service, staff involved in notifying families of low or negative balances, and staff involved in enforcing any other aspects of the meal charge policy.

Excerpts from *USDA Memo SP 46-2016, [Unpaid Meal Charges: Local Meal Charge Policies](#)*<sup>1</sup> (July 8, 2016)

Lauren's Law

A district may not adopt any rule, policy, or program under Education Code 28.002 that would prohibit a parent or grandparent of a student from providing any food product of the parent's or grandparent's choice to:

1. Children in the classroom of the child on the occasion of the child's birthday; or
2. Children at a school-designated function.

*Education Code 28.002(1-3)(2)*

Donation of Food

A district may allow a campus to donate food to a nonprofit organization through an official of the nonprofit organization who is affiliated with the campus, including a teacher, counselor, or parent of a student enrolled at the campus. The donated food may be received, stored, and distributed on the campus. Food donated by the campus may include:

1. Surplus food prepared for breakfast, lunch, or dinner meals or a snack to be served at the campus cafeteria, subject to any applicable local, state, and federal requirements; or
2. Food donated to the campus as the result of a food drive or similar event.

The type of food donated may include packaged and unpackaged unserved food, packaged served food if the packaging is in good condition, whole uncut produce, wrapped raw produce, and unpeeled fruit required to be peeled before consumption.

Food donated to a nonprofit may be distributed at the campus at any time. Campus employees may assist in preparing and distributing as volunteers of the nonprofit organization.

A district may adopt a policy under which the district provides food at no cost to a student for breakfast, lunch, or dinner meals or a snack if the student is unable to purchase such meals or snack.

*Education Code 33.907*

---

<sup>1</sup> USDA Memo *Unpaid Meal Charges: Local Meal Charge Policies:*  
<https://fns-prod.azureedge.net/sites/default/files/cn/SP46-2016os.pdf>



---

**Note:** For additional legal requirements applicable to purchases with federal funds, including 2 C.F.R. 200, see CBB.

For more information on United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) procurement requirements, see the Texas Department of Agriculture (TDA) [Food and Nutrition Division Administrator's Reference Manual](#),<sup>1</sup> Section 17.

---

## Definitions

For purposes of this policy, "2 C.F.R. part 200" means the Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards published by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB). The part reference covers applicable: Acronyms and Definitions (subpart A), General Provisions (subpart B), Post Federal Award Requirements (subpart D), Cost Principles (subpart E), and Audit Requirements (subpart F). (Note: Pre-Federal Award Requirements and Contents of Federal Awards [subpart C] does not apply to the National School Lunch Program). *7 C.F.R. 210.2, 220.2*

"School food authority" (SFA) means the governing body that is responsible for the administration of one or more schools and has the legal authority to operate the program therein or be otherwise approved by the USDA Food and Nutrition Service (FNS) to operate the program.

"Program" means the National School Lunch Program (NSLP) and the Commodity School Program or the School Breakfast Program (SBP), as applicable.

"Nonprofit school food service" means all food service operations conducted by the SFA principally for the benefit of school children, all of the revenue from which is used solely for the operation or improvement of such food services.

"Nonprofit school food service account" means the restricted account in which all of the revenue from all food service operations conducted by the SFA principally for the benefit of school children is retained and used only for the operation or improvement of the nonprofit school food service.

"Cost reimbursable contract" means a contract that provides for payment of incurred costs to the extent prescribed in the contract, with or without a fixed fee.

*7 C.F.R. 210.2, 220.2*

<b>Administration</b>	The SFA shall be responsible for the administration of the program in schools. <i>7 C.F.R. 210.3</i>
<b>Nonprofit School Food Service</b> National School Lunch Program	The SFA shall maintain a nonprofit school food service. Revenues received by the nonprofit school food service are to be used only for the operation or improvement of such food service, except that such revenues shall not be used to purchase land or buildings, unless otherwise approved by FNS, or to construct buildings. Expenditures of nonprofit school food service revenues shall be in accordance with the financial management system established by the TDA under <i>7 C.F.R. 210.19(a)</i> . <i>7 C.F.R. 210.14(a)</i>
School Breakfast Program	Pursuant to required written agreements, the SFA shall, with respect to participating schools under its jurisdiction maintain a nonprofit school food service. In accordance with the financial management system established under <i>7 C.F.R. 220.13(i)</i> , use all revenues received by such food service only for the operation or improvement of that food service. Revenues received by the nonprofit school food service shall not be used to purchase land or buildings or to construct buildings. <i>7 C.F.R. 220.7(e)(1)(i)–(iii)</i>
<b>Food Service Management Companies</b>	An SFA may contract with a food service management company to manage its food service operation in one or more of its schools. However, no school or SFA may contract with a food service management company to operate an a la carte food service unless the company agrees to offer free, reduced price and paid reimbursable lunches to all eligible children. Any SFA that employs a food service management company in the operation of its nonprofit school food service shall comply with the requirements of <i>7 C.F.R. 210.16</i> (NSLP) or <i>7 C.F.R. 220.7(d)</i> (SBP). <i>7 C.F.R. 210.16, 220.7</i>
<b>USDA Procurement Requirements</b>	The SFA shall comply with requirements of <i>7 C.F.R. Part 210</i> (NSLP), <i>Part 220</i> (SBP), and <i>2 C.F.R. Part 200</i> , subpart D and USDA implementing regulations <i>2 C.F.R. Part 400</i> and <i>Part 415</i> , as applicable, which implement the applicable requirements, concerning procurement of all goods and services with nonprofit school food service account funds. <i>7 C.F.R. 210.21(a), 220.16(a)</i>
District Procurement Procedures	An SFA may use its own procurement procedures which reflect applicable state and local laws and regulations, provided that procurements made with nonprofit school food service account funds adhere to the standards set forth in <i>7 C.F.R. Part 210</i> and in <i>2 C.F.R. Part 200</i> , Subpart D, as applicable. SFA procedures must include a written code of standards of conduct meeting the minimum standards of <i>2 CFR 200.318</i> , as applicable. [See CBB(LEGAL) at Procurement Standards]

*Pre-issuance  
Review*

TDA may impose a pre-issuance review requirement on an SFA's proposed procurement. The SFA must make available, upon request by TDA, its procurement documents, including but not limited to solicitation documents, specifications, evaluation criteria, procurement procedures, proposed contracts and contract terms. The SFA shall comply with TDA requests for changes to procurement procedures and solicitation and contract documents to ensure that, to TDA's satisfaction, such procedures and documents reflect applicable procurement and contract requirements and the requirements of 7 C.F.R. Part 210.

*Prohibited  
Expenditures—  
Noncompliant  
Procurement*

No expenditure may be made from the nonprofit school food service account for any cost resulting from a procurement failing to meet the requirements of 7 C.F.R. Part 210 (NSLP) or Part 220 (SBP).

*7 C.F.R. 210.21(c), 220.16(c)*

**Conflicts of Interest**

A district must disclose in writing any potential conflicts of interest to the USDA awarding agency or pass-through entity (e.g., TDA).

The district must maintain written standards of conduct covering conflicts of interest and governing the performance of its employees in the selection, award and administration of federal awards. No employee, officer or agent may participate in the selection, award, or administration of a federal award if he or she has a real or apparent conflict of interest. Such a conflict of interest would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any member of his or her immediate family, his or her partner, or an organization which employs or is about to employ any of the parties indicated herein, has a financial or other interest in or a tangible personal benefit from a non-federal entity considered for a federal award. The district may set standards for situations in which the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal value. The standards of conduct must provide for disciplinary actions to be applied for violations of such standards by officers, employees, or agents of the district.

*2 C.F.R. 400.2*

**Cost Reimbursable  
Contracts**

The SFA must include the provisions specified in 7 C.F.R. 210.21(f)(1) (NSLP) or 220.16(e)(1) (SBP) in all cost reimbursable contracts, including contracts with cost reimbursable provisions, and in solicitation documents prepared to obtain offers for such contracts.

Prohibited  
Expenditures—  
Noncompliant  
Contract

No expenditure may be made from the nonprofit school food service account for any cost resulting from a cost reimbursable contract that fails to include the requirements of 7 C.F.R. 210.21 (NSLP) or 220.16 (SBP), nor may any expenditure be made from the nonprofit school food service account that permits or results in the contractor receiving payments in excess of the contractor's actual, net allowable costs.

*7 C.F.R. 210.21(f), 220.16(e)*

**Buy American**

Domestic  
Commodity or  
Product

“Domestic commodity or product” means an agricultural commodity that is produced in the United States, and a food product that is processed in the United States substantially using agricultural commodities that are produced in the United States.

Requirement

The USDA shall require that an SFA purchase, to the maximum extent practicable, domestic commodities or products.

*7 C.F.R. 210.21(d), 220.16(d)*

**Optional Geographic  
Preference**

An SFA participating in the program may apply a geographic preference when procuring unprocessed locally grown or locally raised agricultural products. When utilizing the geographic preference to procure such products, the SFA making the purchase has the discretion to determine the local area to which the geographic preference option will be applied.

For the purpose of applying the optional geographic procurement preference, “unprocessed locally grown or locally raised agricultural products” means only those agricultural products that retain their inherent character. The effects of the following food handling and preservation techniques shall not be considered as changing an agricultural product into a product of a different kind or character: cooling; refrigerating; freezing; size adjustment made by peeling, slicing, dicing, cutting, chopping, shucking, and grinding; forming ground products into patties without any additives or fillers; drying/dehydration; washing; packaging (such as placing eggs in cartons), vacuum packing and bagging (such as placing vegetables in bags or combining two or more types of vegetables or fruits in a single package); the addition of ascorbic acid or other preservatives to prevent oxidation of produce; butchering livestock and poultry; cleaning fish; and the pasteurization of milk.

*7 C.F.R. 210.21(g), 220.16(f)*

**Sale of Milk**

An SFA participating in the program, or a person approved by a school participating in the program, must not directly or indirectly restrict the sale or marketing of fluid milk (as described in 7 C.F.R. 210.10(d)(4)) at any time or in any place on school premises or at any school-sponsored event. *7 C.F.R. 210.21(e)*

**Dairy Products**

A district may not purchase milk, cream, butter, cheese, or a product consisting largely of one or more of those items that has been imported from outside the United States. This provision does not apply to the purchase of milk powder if domestic milk powder is not readily available in the normal course of business. *Health & Safety Code 435.021*

**Imported Beef**

A district may not purchase beef or a product consisting substantially of beef that has been imported from outside the United States. *Agriculture Code 150.012*

---

<sup>1</sup> TDA Food and Nutrition Division *Administrator's Reference Manual*:  
<http://squaremeals.org/Publications/Handbooks.aspx>

**Claims for  
Reimbursement**

Internal Controls

The school food authority (SFA) shall establish internal controls which ensure the accuracy of meal counts prior to the submission of the monthly claim for reimbursement under the National School Lunch Program (NSLP) or the School Breakfast Program (SBP), as applicable. At a minimum, these internal controls shall include an on-site review of the meal counting and claiming system employed by each school within the jurisdiction of the SFA; comparisons of daily free, reduced price, and paid meal counts against data which will assist in the identification of meal counts in excess of the number of free, reduced price, and paid meals served each day to children eligible for such meals; and a system for following up on those meal counts which suggest the likelihood of meal counting problems. *7 C.F.R. 210.8(a), 220.11(a)*

On-Site Reviews

Every school year, each SFA with more than one school shall perform no less than one on-site review of the counting and claiming system and the readily observable general areas of review cited under 7 C.F.R. 210.18(h) (regarding general areas of review by the Texas Department of Agriculture) for each school under its jurisdiction under the NSLP, and for a minimum of 50 percent of schools under its jurisdiction with every school being reviewed at least once every two years under the SBP.

The on-site review shall take place prior to February 1 of each school year. Further, if the review discloses problems with a school's meal counting or claiming procedures or general review areas, the SFA shall ensure that the school implements corrective action and, within 45 days of the review, conduct a follow-up on-site review to determine that the corrective action resolved the problems. Each on-site review shall ensure that the school's claim is based on the counting system and that the counting system, as implemented, yields the actual number of reimbursable free, reduced price, and paid meals, respectively, served for each day of operation.

*7 C.F.R. 210.8(a)(1), 220.11(d)(1)*

[For the definition of "school food authority," see COA(LEGAL).]

**Record Retention**

SFA records shall be retained for a period of three years after submission of the final claim for reimbursement for the fiscal year. If audit findings have not been resolved, the records shall be retained beyond the three-year period as long as required for the issues raised by the audit. *7 C.F.R. 210.23(c)*

**School Meals  
Program Options**

If at least ten percent of the students enrolled in one or more schools in a district are eligible for free or reduced-price breakfasts under the national school breakfast program provided for by the Child Nutrition Act of 1966 (42 U.S.C. 1773), the board shall either:



FOOD AND NUTRITION MANAGEMENT  
FREE AND REDUCED-PRICE MEALS

COB  
(LEGAL)

1. Participate in the national program and extend its benefits to all eligible students in the school or schools; or
2. Develop and implement a locally funded program to provide free meals, including breakfast and lunch, to each student eligible for free meals under federal law and reduced-price meals, including breakfast and lunch, to each student eligible for reduced-price meals under federal law, provided that the reduced price may not exceed the maximum allowable rate under federal law.

A district is permitted to participate in the national program at one or more campuses in the district and provide a locally funded program at one or more other campuses in the district.

**Free Breakfast**

A campus participating in the national school breakfast program or providing a locally funded program in which 80 percent or more of the students qualify under the national program for a free or reduced-price breakfast shall offer a free breakfast to each student.

*Waiver*

The commissioner of education shall grant a waiver of the free breakfast requirement, not to exceed one year, to a campus if the board votes to request the waiver at the board's annual meeting to discuss and adopt the budget and the proposed tax rate under Education Code 44.044. Before voting to request a waiver, the board shall list the waiver as a separate item for consideration on the meeting's agenda and provide an opportunity for public comment regarding the waiver at the meeting.

*Education Code 33.901*

**Summer Nutrition Program**

Unless the Texas Department of Agriculture (TDA) grants a district a waiver, a district in which 50 percent or more of the students are eligible to participate in the national free or reduced-price lunch program under 42 U.S.C. Section 1751 et seq. shall provide or arrange for the provision of a summer nutrition program for at least 30 days during the period in which district schools are recessed for the summer. *Agriculture Code 12.0029(b)*

"Summer nutrition program" means the Summer Food Service Program under 42 U.S.C. 1761. The term includes the seamless summer option under 42 U.S.C. 1761(a)(8). *Agriculture Code 12.0029(a)(2)*

**Notice from TDA**

Not later than October 31 of each year, TDA shall notify each qualifying district of the district's responsibility concerning provision of a summer nutrition program during the next period in which school is recessed for the summer. *Agriculture Code 12.0029(c)*



Notice to TDA	Each district that receives a notice from TDA shall, not later than January 31 of the year following the year in which the notice was received, inform TDA in writing that the district intends to provide or arrange for the provision of a summer nutrition program during the next period in which district schools are recessed for the summer; or request in writing that TDA grant the district a waiver of the requirement. <i>Agriculture Code 12.0029(e)</i>
<i>Required Documentation</i>	A district that arranges for the provision of a summer nutrition program must enter into an agreement to partner or collaborate with a local governmental entity, educational institution, or private non-profit organization to ensure meal service for children in the district's attendance area and must provide TDA with written documentation of the arrangement no later than April 1 of each year. <i>4 TAC 25.601(b)</i>
Waiver	<p>Not later than November 30 of each year, the board of a district that intends to request a waiver must send written notice of the district's intention to the district's local school health advisory council. The notice must include an explanation of the district's reason for requesting a waiver of the requirement. <i>Agriculture Code 12.0029(d)</i></p> <p>TDA may grant a district a one-year waiver of the requirement to provide or arrange for the provision of a summer nutrition program only if:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The district has worked with the TDA field offices to identify another possible provider for the program in the district, and the district provides documentation, verified by TDA, showing that:<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. There are fewer than 100 children in the district currently eligible for the national free or reduced-price lunch program;</li><li>b. Transportation to enable district students to participate in the program is an insurmountable obstacle to the district's ability to provide or arrange for the provision of the program despite consultation by the district with public transit providers;</li><li>c. The district is unable to provide or arrange for the provision of a program due to renovation or construction of district facilities and the unavailability of an appropriate alternate provider or site; or</li><li>d. The district is unable to provide or arrange for the provision of a program due to another specified extenuating</li></ol></li></ol>

circumstance and the unavailability of an appropriate alternate provider or site; or

2. The cost to the district to provide or arrange for provision of a program would be cost-prohibitive, as determined by TDA using the criteria and methodology established by TDA rule.

*Agriculture Code 12.0029(f); 4 TAC 25.601(d), (e)*

*Alternate  
Provider*

If a district has requested a waiver and has been unable to provide to TDA a list of possible providers for the summer nutrition program, the TDA field offices shall continue to attempt to identify an alternate provider for the district's summer nutrition program. *Agriculture Code 12.0029(i)*

**Community  
Eligibility Provision**

The community eligibility provision (CEP) is an alternative reimbursement option for eligible high poverty districts. Each CEP cycle lasts up to four years before the district or school is required to recalculate their reimbursement rate. Districts and schools have the option to recalculate sooner, if desired. A district may elect this provision for all of its schools, a group of schools, or an individual school. Participating districts must offer free breakfasts and lunches for the length of their CEP cycle, not to exceed four successive years, to all children attending participating schools and receive meal reimbursement based on claiming percentages, as described in 7 C.F.R. 245.9(f)(4)(v). *7 C.F.R. 245.9(f); 42 U.S.C. 1759a(a)(1)(F)*

To be eligible to participate in the CEP, a district, group of schools, or school must:

1. Have an identified student percentage of at least 40 percent, as of April 1 of the school year prior to participating in the CEP, unless otherwise specified by the USDA Food and Nutrition Service (FNS). Individual schools participating in a group may have less than 40 percent identified students, provided that the average identified student percentage for the group is at least 40 percent.
2. Participate in the NSLP and SBP for the duration of the four-year cycle. Schools that operate on a limited schedule, where it is not operationally feasible to offer both lunch and breakfast, may elect CEP with FNS approval.
3. Comply with the procedures and requirements specified in 7 C.F.R. 245.9(f)(4) to participate in the CEP.

*7 C.F.R. 245.9(f)(3)*

[For information on other special assistance certification and reimbursement alternatives, see 7 C.F.R. 245.9.]

---

**Note:** For Board member use of District technology resources, see BBI. For student use of personal electronic devices, see FNCE.

---

For purposes of this policy, “technology resources” means electronic communication systems and electronic equipment.

**Availability of Access**

Access to the District’s technology resources, including the internet, shall be made available to students and employees primarily for instructional and administrative purposes and in accordance with administrative regulations.

Limited Personal Use

Limited personal use of the District’s technology resources shall be permitted if the use:

1. Imposes no tangible cost on the District;
2. Does not unduly burden the District’s technology resources; and
3. Has no adverse effect on an employee’s job performance or on a student’s academic performance.

Use by Members of the Public

Access to the District’s technology resources, including the internet, shall be made available to members of the public, in accordance with administrative regulations. Such use shall be permitted so long as the use:

1. Imposes no tangible cost on the District; and
2. Does not unduly burden the District’s technology resources.

**Acceptable Use**

The Superintendent or designee shall develop and implement administrative regulations, guidelines, and user agreements consistent with the purposes and mission of the District and with law and policy.

Access to the District’s technology resources is a privilege, not a right. All users shall be required to acknowledge receipt and understanding of all administrative regulations governing use of the District’s technology resources and shall agree in writing to allow monitoring of their use and to comply with such regulations and guidelines. Noncompliance may result in suspension of access or termination of privileges and other disciplinary action consistent with District policies. [See DH, FN series, FO series, and the Student Code of Conduct] Violations of law may result in criminal prosecution as well as disciplinary action by the District.

**Internet Safety**

The Superintendent or designee shall develop and implement an internet safety plan to:

1. Control students' access to inappropriate materials, as well as to materials that are harmful to minors;
2. Ensure student safety and security when using electronic communications;
3. Prevent unauthorized access, including hacking and other unlawful activities;
4. Restrict unauthorized disclosure, use, and dissemination of personally identifiable information regarding students; and
5. Educate students about cyberbullying awareness and response and about appropriate online behavior, including interacting with other individuals on social networking websites and in chat rooms.

**Filtering**

Each District computer with internet access and the District's network systems shall have filtering devices or software that blocks access to visual depictions that are obscene, pornographic, inappropriate for students, or harmful to minors, as defined by the federal Children's Internet Protection Act and as determined by the Superintendent or designee.

The Superintendent or designee shall enforce the use of such filtering devices. Upon approval from the Superintendent or designee, an administrator, supervisor, or other authorized person may disable the filtering device for bona fide research or other lawful purpose.

**Monitored Use**

Electronic mail transmissions and other use of the District's technology resources by students, employees, and members of the public shall not be considered private. Designated District staff shall be authorized to monitor the District's technology resources at any time to ensure appropriate use.

**Disclaimer of Liability**

The District shall not be liable for users' inappropriate use of the District's technology resources, violations of copyright restrictions or other laws, users' mistakes or negligence, and costs incurred by users. The District shall not be responsible for ensuring the availability of the District's technology resources or the accuracy, age appropriateness, or usability of any information found on the internet.

**Record Retention**

A District employee shall retain electronic records, whether created or maintained using the District's technology resources or using personal technology resources, in accordance with the District's record management program. [See CPC]

**Electronically Signed Documents**

At the District's discretion, the District may make certain transactions available online, including student admissions documents,

student grade and performance information, contracts for goods and services, and employment documents.

To the extent the District offers transactions electronically, the District may accept electronic signatures in accordance with this policy.

When accepting electronically signed documents or digital signatures, the District shall comply with rules adopted by the Department of Information Resources, to the extent practicable, to:

- Authenticate a digital signature for a written electronic communication sent to the District;
- Maintain all records as required by law;
- Ensure that records are created and maintained in a secure environment;
- Maintain appropriate internal controls on the use of electronic signatures;
- Implement means of confirming transactions; and
- Train staff on related procedures as necessary.

### **Security Breach Notification**

Upon discovering or receiving notification of a breach of system security, the District shall disclose the breach to affected persons or entities in accordance with the time frames established by law.

The District shall give notice by using one or more of the following methods:

1. Written notice.
2. Electronic mail, if the District has electronic mail addresses for the affected persons.
3. Conspicuous posting on the District's website.
4. Publication through broadcast media.

**Compliance with Law**

The Superintendent shall be responsible for establishing procedures that ensure that all school facilities within the District comply with applicable laws and local building codes.

**Construction Contracts**

Prior to advertising, the Board shall determine the project delivery/contract award method to be used for each construction contract valued at or above \$50,000. To assist the Board, the Superintendent shall recommend the project delivery/contract award method that he or she determines provides the best value to the District. [See CV series generally and CBB(LEGAL) for requirements if federal funds are involved.]

For construction contracts valued at or above \$50,000, the Superintendent shall also submit the resulting contract to the Board for approval. Lesser expenditures for construction and construction-related materials or services shall be at the discretion of the Superintendent and consistent with law and policy. [See also CH and CBB(LEGAL)]

**Change Orders**

Change orders permitted by law shall be approved by the Board or its designee prior to any changes being made in the approved plans or the actual construction of the facility.

The Superintendent is authorized, but not required, to execute the following:

1. A change order (as defined in the applicable contract) that establishes a reduction of the contract amount due to credits and other savings (for example, unspent allowances or contingencies), but that does not change the scope, quality, or quantity of the work.
2. A change order (as defined in the applicable contract) that extends the contract time (as defined in the applicable contract), but only when such extension of time is approved by the architect as part of a contract's "claims" process.

**Project Administration**

All construction projects shall be administered by the Superintendent or designee.

The Superintendent shall keep the Board informed concerning construction projects and also shall provide information to the general public.

**Final Payment**

The District shall not make final payments for construction or the supervision of construction until the work has been completed and has been accepted by the Superintendent or designee.

**Liquidated Damages**

This section applies to contracts that contain a provision for liquidated damages to be paid by the contractor/vendor. The Superintendent is authorized to delay execution of the District's contractual rights to liquidated damages by electing not to deduct or seek recovery of accrued liquidated damages from pending payment applications. The Superintendent's decision to delay execution of a District contractual right to liquidated damages shall not constitute a waiver of the District's rights to enforce and execute its contractual rights.

The Superintendent's authority under this section includes the authority to make payments (prior to final payment) without assessing liquidated damages and without waiving any right to recover or withhold all accrued liquidated damages in the future. Neither any delay in enforcing the District's rights to liquidated damages nor any payment by the District constitutes a waiver of any of the District's rights under any contract or law, or in equity, including, but not limited to, any rights to liquidated damages.

In cases where the total amount of accrued liquidated damages is less than \$50,000, the Superintendent is authorized to make final payment without withholding accrued liquidated damages. A decision by the Superintendent to make final payment without withholding accrued liquidated damages shall not constitute a waiver of the District's contractual rights to liquidated damages.

If the amount of liquidated damages is \$50,000 or more, the Superintendent may either:

1. Issue final payment after deducting the full amount of liquidated damages; or
2. Present the issue to the Board for further consideration.



**School Bus Drivers** A person shall not drive a school bus, school activity bus, or multi-function school activity bus unless he or she is physically qualified to do so. Each school bus driver shall undergo and successfully complete an annual physical examination in accordance with the requirements of 49 C.F.R. 391.41 and 391.43, which list those physical and mental conditions for which the medical examiner is directed to disqualify an applicant. A driver shall not operate a school bus, school activity bus, or multifunction school activity bus unless he or she has in his or her possession the original, or photographic copy, of the medical examiner's certificate stating that the driver is physically qualified to drive a school bus, school activity bus, or multifunction school activity bus. *Transp. Code 521.022; 37 TAC 14.12*

A person disqualified on the basis of the medical examination may request special consideration in accordance with 37 Administrative Code 14.13.

**Definitions** The definitions related to individuals with disabilities and exceptions to those definitions included in policy DAA shall be used in applying and interpreting this policy and any local policy adopted in conjunction with this policy.

**Bloodborne Pathogen Control** A district that employs employees who provide services in a public or private facility providing health-care-related services, or who otherwise have a risk of exposure to blood or other material potentially containing bloodborne pathogens in connection with exposure to sharps shall comply with the minimum standards set by the Texas Department of State Health Services (TDSHS). This includes a district that operates a public school health clinic.

**"Sharp" Defined** A "sharp" is an object used or encountered in a health-care setting that can be reasonably anticipated to penetrate the skin or any other part of the body and to result in an exposure incident, including a needle device, a scalpel, a lancet, a piece of broken glass, a broken capillary tube, an exposed end of a dental wire, or a dental knife, drill, or bur.

**Exposure Control Plan** The TDSHS has developed an exposure control plan as a model plan to achieve the minimum standards in Health and Safety Code 81.304. The plan is designed to minimize exposure of employees to bloodborne pathogens and includes policies relating to occupational exposure to bloodborne pathogens, training and educational requirements for employees, measures to increase vaccination of employees, and increased use of personnel protective equipment by employees.

The TDSHS Bloodborne Pathogens Exposure Control Plan requires a district to:

EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS AND RESTRICTIONS  
MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS AND COMMUNICABLE DISEASES

DBB  
(LEGAL)

1. Develop, review annually, update as necessary, and document its actions regarding a comprehensive exposure control plan appropriate to the district and its particular facilities;
2. Provide, at district expense, personal protective equipment and Hepatitis B vaccinations to affected employees, and if an employee declines to be vaccinated, maintain a record of the employee's written refusal;
3. Provide to affected employees pre-service and annual refresher training as described in the TDSHS Exposure Control Plan;
4. Record all exposure incidents (e.g., "sticks" by needles or other "sharps") in a sharps injury log and report the sharps injury to TDSHS on a standardized form; and
5. Provide a post-exposure evaluation and follow up with an employee who has a sharps injury.

*Health and Safety Code 81.301-.307; 25 TAC Ch. 96*

**Cost of Testing**

If certified emergency medical services personnel, an emergency response employee or volunteer, or a first responder who renders assistance at the scene of an emergency or during transport to the hospital is accidentally exposed to blood or other body fluids of a patient, the hospital to which the patient is transported shall take reasonable steps to test the patient for hepatitis B, hepatitis C, HIV, or any reportable disease. A district that employs the person, or for which the person works as a volunteer in connection with rendering the assistance, is responsible for paying the costs of the test.

*Health and Safety Code 81.095(b)*

**Genetic Information**

Any receipt of genetic information in response to a request for medical information shall be deemed inadvertent if a district uses language such as that at 29 C.F.R. 1635.8(b)(1)(i)(B). 29 C.F.R. 1635.8(b)(1)(i)(A) [See DAB]

**Pre-employment  
Inquiries and  
Employment  
Entrance  
Examinations**

A district shall not conduct a medical examination or make inquiries of a job applicant as to whether such applicant is an individual with a disability or as to the nature or severity of a disability, except as provided below. However, a district is permitted to make pre-employment inquiries into the ability of an applicant to perform job-related functions, such as asking an applicant to describe or demonstrate how, with or without reasonable accommodation, the applicant will be able to perform job-related functions. 42 U.S.C. 12112(d)(2); 29 C.F.R. 1630.14(a)

A district may require a medical examination (and/or inquiry) after an offer of employment has been made to a job applicant and prior

EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS AND RESTRICTIONS  
MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS AND COMMUNICABLE DISEASES

DBB  
(LEGAL)

to the beginning of employment duties and may condition the offer on the results of such examination (and/or inquiry), provided all entering employees in the same job category are subjected to such an examination (and/or inquiry) regardless of disability.

The results of an employment entrance medical examination shall be used only to determine the applicant's ability to perform job-related functions.

*42 U.S.C. 12112(d)(3); 29 C.F.R. 1630.14(b)*

Confidentiality

Information obtained regarding the medical condition or history of the applicant shall be collected and maintained on separate forms and in separate medical files and shall be treated as confidential medical records. However, supervisors and managers may be informed regarding necessary restrictions on the employee's work or duties and necessary accommodation; first aid and safety personnel may be informed, when appropriate, if the disability might require emergency treatment. *29 C.F.R. 1630.14(b), (c)*

**Examination During  
Employment**

The district may require a medical examination (and/or inquiry) of an employee that is job related and consistent with business necessity and may make inquiries into the ability of an employee to perform job-related functions.

**Placement on  
Temporary Disability**

The board may adopt a policy providing for placing an educator on leave of absence for temporary disability if, in the board's judgment and in consultation with a physician who has performed a thorough medical examination of the educator, the educator's condition interferes with the performance of regular duties. Such a policy must reserve to the educator the right to present to the board testimony or other information relevant to the educator's fitness to continue the performance of regular duties. [See also DEC]

The results of an employee's medical examination shall be used only to determine the employee's ability to perform job-related functions.

*42 U.S.C. 12112(d)(3)-(4); 29 C.F.R. 1630.14(c); Education Code 21.409(c)*

EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS AND RESTRICTIONS  
CONFLICT OF INTEREST

DBD  
(LEGAL)

**Prohibited Activities  
by Public Servants—  
State Law**

“Public servant” means a person elected, selected, appointed, employed, or otherwise designated as an officer, employee, or agent of government, even if the person has not yet qualified for office or assumed his or her duties. *Penal Code 1.07(a)(41)(A), (E)*

Bribery

A person commits an offense if the person intentionally or knowingly offers, confers, or agrees to confer on another, or solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept from another, any benefit:

1. As consideration for the recipient’s decision, opinion, recommendation, vote, or other exercise of discretion as a public servant;
2. As consideration for a violation of a duty imposed by law on a public servant; or
3. That is a political contribution as defined by Election Code Title 15 or an expenditure made and reported in accordance with Government Code Chapter 305 (regarding registration of lobbyists), if the benefit was offered, conferred, solicited, accepted, or agreed to pursuant to an express agreement to take or withhold a specific exercise of official discretion, if such exercise of official discretion would not have been taken or withheld but for the benefit.

“Benefit” means anything reasonably regarded as pecuniary gain or pecuniary advantage, including benefit to any other person in whose welfare the beneficiary has a direct and substantial interest.

*Penal Code 36.01(3), .02*

Illegal Gifts

A public servant who exercises discretion in connection with contracts, purchases, payments, claims, or other pecuniary transactions of government commits an offense if the public servant solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept any benefit from a person the public servant knows is interested in or likely to become interested in any contract, purchase, payment, claim or transaction involving the exercise of the public servant’s discretion. *Penal Code 36.08(d)*

A public servant who receives an unsolicited benefit that the public servant is prohibited from accepting under the provisions above may donate the benefit to a governmental entity that has the authority to accept the gift or may donate the benefit to a recognized tax exempt charitable organization formed for educational, religious, or scientific purposes. *Penal Code 36.08(d), (i)*

*Exceptions*

Illegal Gifts does not apply to:

EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS AND RESTRICTIONS  
CONFLICT OF INTEREST

DBD  
(LEGAL)

1. A fee prescribed by law to be received by a public servant or any other benefit to which the public servant is lawfully entitled or for which the public servant gives legitimate consideration in a capacity other than as a public servant;
2. A gift or other benefit conferred on account of kinship or a personal, professional, or business relationship independent of the official status of the recipient;
3. A benefit to a public servant required to file a statement under Government Code Chapter 572 or a report under Election Code Title 15 that is derived from a function in honor or appreciation of the recipient if:
  - a. The benefit and the source of any benefit in excess of \$50 is reported in the statement; and
  - b. The benefit is used solely to defray the expenses that accrue in the performance of duties or activities in connection with the office which are nonreimbursable by the state or political subdivision;
4. A political contribution as defined by Election Code Title 15;
5. An item with a value of less than \$50, excluding cash or a negotiable instrument as described by Business and Commerce Code 3.104;
6. An item issued by a governmental entity that allows the use of property or facilities owned, leased, or operated by the governmental entity; or
7. Food, lodging, transportation, or entertainment accepted as a guest and, if the donee is required by law to report those items, reported by the donee in accordance with that law.

*Penal Code 36.10*

Honoraria and  
Expenses

A public servant commits an offense if the public servant solicits, accepts, or agrees to accept an honorarium in consideration for services that the public servant would not have been requested to provide but for the person's official position or duties. This provision does not prohibit a public servant from accepting transportation and lodging expenses or meals in connection with a conference or similar event in which the public servant renders services, such as addressing an audience or engaging in a seminar, to the extent those services are more than merely perfunctory. *Penal Code 36.07*

EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS AND RESTRICTIONS  
CONFLICT OF INTEREST

DBD  
(LEGAL)

Abuse of Official  
Capacity

A public servant commits an offense if, with intent to obtain a benefit or with intent to harm or defraud another, he intentionally or knowingly violates a law relating to the public servant's office or employment, or misuses government property, services, personnel, or any other thing of value, belonging to the government that has come into the public servant's custody or possession by virtue of the public servant's office or employment. *Penal Code 39.02(a)*

"Law relating to a public servant's office or employment" means a law that specifically applies to a person acting in the capacity of a public servant and that directly or indirectly imposes a duty on the public servant or governs the conduct of the public servant. *Penal Code 39.01(1)*

"Misuse" means to deal with property contrary to:

1. An agreement under which the public servant holds the property;
2. A contract of employment or oath of office of a public servant;
3. A law, including provisions of the General Appropriations Act specifically relating to government property, that prescribes the manner of custody or disposition of the property; or
4. A limited purpose for which the property is delivered or received.

*Penal Code 39.01(2)*

**Misuse of Official  
Information**

A public servant commits an offense if, in reliance on information to which the public servant has access by virtue of the person's office or employment and that has not been made public, the person:

1. Acquires or aids another to acquire a pecuniary interest in any property, transaction, or enterprise that may be affected by the information;
2. Speculates or aids another to speculate on the basis of the information; or
3. As a public servant, including as a school administrator, coerces another into suppressing or failing to report that information to a law enforcement agency.

A public servant commits an offense if with intent to obtain a benefit or with intent to harm or defraud another, the public servant discloses or uses information for a nongovernmental purpose that:

1. The person has access to by means of the person's office or employment; and



2. Has not been made public.

“Information that has not been made public” means any information to which the public does not generally have access, and that is prohibited from disclosure under Government Code Chapter 552 (the Public Information Act).

*Penal Code 39.06(a), (b), (d)*

**Instructional  
Materials Violations  
— Commissions**

An administrator or teacher commits an offense if the person receives any commission or rebate on any instructional materials or technological equipment used in the schools with which the person is associated. *Education Code 31.152(a)*

**Instructional  
Materials Violations  
— Conflict**

An administrator or teacher commits an offense if the person accepts a gift, favor, or service that:

1. Is given to the person or the person’s school;
2. Might reasonably tend to influence the person in the selection of instructional materials or technological equipment; and
3. Could not be lawfully purchased with state instructional material funds.

“Gift, favor, or service” does not include staff development, in-service, or teacher training; or ancillary materials, such as maps or worksheets, that convey information to the student or otherwise contribute to the learning process.

*Education Code 31.152(b)–(d)*

**Instructional  
Materials Violations  
— Purchase and  
Distribution**

A person commits a Class C misdemeanor offense if the person knowingly violates any law providing for the purchase or distribution of free instructional materials for the public schools. *Education Code 31.153*

**Holding Civil Office**

No person shall hold or exercise at the same time more than one civil office of emolument, except for offices listed in the constitutional provision, unless otherwise specifically provided. *Tex. Const., Art. XVI, Sec. 40(a)*

A position in or membership in the Texas military forces is not considered to be a civil office of emolument. *Gov’t Code 437.203*

Individuals who receive all or part of their compensation either directly or indirectly from funds of the state of Texas and who are not state officers shall not be barred from serving as members of the governing bodies of school districts (other than those in which they are employed), cities, towns, or other local governmental districts. Such individuals may not receive a salary for serving as members of such governing bodies, except that a schoolteacher, retired



schoolteacher, or retired school administrator may receive compensation for serving as a member of a governing body of a school district, city, town, or local governmental district, including a water district created under Section 59, Article XVI, or Section 52, Article III. *Tex. Const., Art. XVI, Sec. 40(b)*

**Conflicts Disclosure Statement**

A local government officer shall file a conflicts disclosure statement with respect to a vendor if the vendor enters into a contract with the district or the district is considering entering into a contract with the vendor; and the vendor:

1. Has an employment or other business relationship with the local government officer or a family member of the officer, and the business relationship results in the officer or family member receiving taxable income, other than investment income, that exceeds \$2,500 during the 12-month period preceding the date that the officer becomes aware that:
  - a. A contract between the district and the vendor has been executed; or
  - b. The district is considering entering into a contract with the vendor;
2. Has given to the local government officer or a family member of the officer one or more gifts, as defined by law, and the gift or gifts have an aggregate value of more than \$100 in the 12-month period preceding the date the officer becomes aware that:
  - a. A contract between the district and the vendor has been executed; or
  - b. The district is considering entering into a contract with the vendor; or
3. Has a family relationship with the local government officer.

A local government officer is not required to file a conflicts disclosure statement in relation to a gift accepted by the officer or a family member of the officer if the gift is a political contribution as defined by Title 15, Election Code, or food accepted as a guest.

*Local Gov't Code 176.003(a)-(a-1)*

**Definitions**

“Local government officer” means a member of the board; the superintendent; or an agent (including an employee) of the district who exercises discretion in the planning, recommending, selecting, or contracting of a vendor. *Local Gov't Code 176.001(1), (4)*

EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS AND RESTRICTIONS  
CONFLICT OF INTEREST

DBD  
(LEGAL)

“Gift” means a benefit offered by a person, including food, lodging, transportation, and entertainment accepted as a guest. The term does not include a benefit offered on account of kinship or a personal, professional, or business relationship independent of the official status of the recipient. *Local Gov’t Code 176.001(2-b)*

---

**Note:** For additional provisions and definitions relating to conflict disclosure statements, see BBFA(LEGAL).

---

**Personal Services  
Performed by  
Superintendent**

A superintendent of a school district may not receive any financial benefit for personal services performed by the superintendent for any business entity that conducts or solicits business with the district. Any financial benefit received by a superintendent for performing personal services for any other entity, including a school district, open-enrollment charter school, regional education service center, or public or private institution of higher education, must be approved by the board on a case-by-case basis in an open meeting. The receipt of reimbursement for a reasonable expense is not considered a financial benefit. *Education Code 11.201(e)*

---

**Note:** See also CBB for requirements when federal funds are involved.

---

**Term Contracts** Unless employed under a probationary contract [see DCA] or a continuing contract [see DCC], a school district shall employ each classroom teacher, principal, librarian, nurse, or school counselor under a term contract as provided by Education Code Chapter 21, Subchapter E. *Education Code 21.002(a)*

**Definition** In this policy, “teacher” means:

1. A superintendent;
2. A principal;
3. A supervisor;
4. A classroom teacher;
5. A school counselor;
6. Any other full-time professional employee who is required to hold a certificate issued under Education Code Chapter 21, Subchapter B [see DK(EXHIBIT)]; or
7. A nurse.

**Exclusions** In this policy, the term “teacher” does not include a person who is not entitled to a probationary, continuing, or term contract under Education Code 21.002, an existing contract, or district policy.

*Education Code 21.201(1)*

District-Required Certification If a district requires a person, by policy, job description, or contract, to hold a certificate issued under Education Code Chapter 21, Subchapter B, the district is required to employ the person under a term contract as provided by Education Code Chapter 21, Subchapter E. *Fields v. Alief Indep. Sch. Dist., Tex. Comm’r of Educ. Decision No. 006-R10-10-2014 (2015)*

**Probationary Contract Required** Before a teacher may be employed under a term contract, the teacher must be employed under a probationary contract for the period provided by Education Code Chapter 21, Subchapter C [see DCA]. *Education Code 21.202(a)*

Exception The district may employ a person as a principal or classroom teacher under a term contract if the person has experience as a public school principal or classroom teacher, respectively, regardless of whether the person is being employed by the district for the first time or whether a probationary contract would otherwise be required under Education Code 21.102. *Education Code 21.202(b)*

**Contract Terms** A term contract must be in writing and include the terms of employment prescribed by Education Code Chapter 21, Subchapter E. The board may include other provisions in a term contract that are

consistent with that subchapter. Each term contract is subject to the approval of the board.

The board shall provide each term contract employee with a copy of the employee's contract.

*Education Code 21.204(a)–(d)*

**Maximum Duration**

Once an employee has completed the probationary contract period, the duration of a term contract may not exceed five school years. *Education Code 21.205*

**Employment Policies**

If the district has a website, the district shall place the board's employment policies on that website. At each school in the district, the board shall make a copy of the employment policies available for inspection at a reasonable time on request.

On request, the board shall also provide each term contract employee with a copy of the employment policies.

*Education Code 21.204(d)*

**Property Interest**

An employee does not have a property interest in a term contract beyond its term. *Education Code 21.204(e)*

TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT  
RESIGNATION

DFE  
(LEGAL)

**Resignation without  
Consent (Unilateral  
Resignation)**

An educator employed under a probationary contract for the following school year, or under a term or continuing contract, may relinquish the position and leave district employment at the end of the school year without penalty by filing a written resignation with a board or a board's designee not later than the 45th day before the first day of instruction of the following school year.

A written resignation mailed by prepaid certified or registered mail to a board president or a board's designee at the post office address of the district is considered filed at the time of mailing.

*Education Code 21.105(a), .160(a), .210(a)*

An unequivocal resignation filed not later than the 45th day before the first day of instruction of the following school year is effective upon filing with a district and the district cannot reject such a resignation. The resignation cannot be withdrawn by the teacher based on an argument that the district has not accepted the resignation. *Fantroy v. Dallas Indep. Sch. Dist., Tex. Comm'r of Educ. Decision No. 034-R9-0206 (Mar. 5, 2009)*; *Garcia v. Miles Indep. Sch. Dist., Tex. Comm'r of Educ. Decision No. 055-RI-503 (Nov. 30, 2006)*.

**Resignation with  
Consent**

The educator may resign, with the consent of the board or the board's designee, at any other time. *Education Code 21.105(b), .160(b), .210(b)*

**Sanctions for  
Abandonment of  
Contract**

On written complaint by a district, the State Board for Educator Certification (SBEC) may impose sanctions against an educator who is employed under a probationary contract, or under a continuing or term contract, for the following school year, and who:

1. Resigns;
2. Fails without good cause to comply with the resignation deadline or the provision regarding resignation by consent; and
3. Fails without good cause to perform the contract.

*Education Code 21.105(c), .160(c), .210(c)*

Acceptance or approval of a resignation indicates consent to abandonment of contract. *Quitman Indep. Sch. Dist. v. Wilkerson, Tex. Comm'r of Educ. Decision No. 142-TTC-698 (Dec. 2, 1999)*; *Houston Indep. Sch. Dist. v. Johnson, Tex. Comm'r of Educ. Decision No. 054-TTC-1196 (Sept. 28, 1998)*

SBEC shall not pursue sanctions against an educator who is alleged to have abandoned his or her contract unless a board:

1. Submits a written complaint within 30 calendar days after the effective date of the educator's separation from employment

TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT  
RESIGNATION

DFE  
(LEGAL)

from the district. Unless the district and the educator have a written agreement to the contrary, the effective date of separation from employment is the first day that, without district permission, the educator fails to appear for work under the contract.

2. Renders a finding that good cause did not exist under Education Code 21.105(c)(2) (probationary contract), 21.160(c)(2) (continuing contract), or 21.210(c)(2) (term contract). This finding constitutes prima facie evidence of the educator's lack of good cause but is not a conclusive determination.
3. Submits the following required attachments to the written complaint:
  - a. The educator's resignation letter, if any;
  - b. The agreement with the educator regarding the effective date of separation from employment, if any;
  - c. The educator's contract; and
  - d. Board meeting minutes indicating a finding of "no good cause." If the board does not meet within 30 calendar days of the educator's separation from employment, the minutes may be submitted within 10 calendar days after the next board meeting.

*19 TAC 249.14(j)*

**Report to SBEC**

A superintendent shall report the educator's resignation to SBEC if the conditions set forth at Education Code 21.006 exist. [See DHB] *Education Code 21.006*

**Investigation**

A superintendent of a district, including a district of innovation, shall complete an investigation of an educator that involves evidence that the educator may have abused or otherwise committed an unlawful act, was involved in a romantic relationship with, or solicited or engaged in sexual contact with a student or minor, despite the educator's resignation from employment before completion of the investigation. *Education Code 21.006(b-1); 19 TAC 249.14(d)(3)(C)*

**Report by Principal**

A person who serves as a principal in a district, including a district of innovation, must notify the superintendent, and may be subject to sanctions for failure to do so, not later than the seventh business day after the date of an educator's resignation following an alleged incident of misconduct described by Education Code 21.006(b) [see DP]. *Education Code 21.006(b-2); 19 TAC 249.14(e)*

Each District employee shall perform his or her duties in accordance with state and federal law, District policy, and ethical standards. The District holds all employees accountable to the Educators' Code of Ethics. [See DH(EXHIBIT)]

Each District employee shall recognize and respect the rights of students, parents, other employees, and members of the community and shall work cooperatively with others to serve the best interests of the District.

An employee wishing to express concern, complaints, or criticism shall do so through appropriate channels. [See DGBA]

**Violations of Standards of Conduct**

Each employee shall comply with the standards of conduct set out in this policy and with any other policies, regulations, and guidelines that impose duties, requirements, or standards attendant to his or her status as a District employee. Violation of any policies, regulations, or guidelines, including intentionally making a false claim, offering a false statement, or refusing to cooperate with a District investigation, may result in disciplinary action, including termination of employment. [See DCD and DF series]

**Weapons Prohibited**

The District prohibits the use, possession, or display of any firearm, location-restricted knife, club, or prohibited weapon, as defined at FNCG, on District property at all times.

Exceptions

No violation of this policy occurs when:

1. A District employee who holds a Texas handgun license stores a handgun or other firearm in a locked vehicle in a parking lot, parking garage, or other parking area provided by the District, provided the handgun or other firearm is not in plain view; or
2. The use, possession, or display of an otherwise prohibited weapon takes place as part of a District-approved activity supervised by proper authorities. [See FOD]

**Electronic Communication**

Use with Students

A certified employee, licensed employee, or any other employee designated in writing by the Superintendent or a campus principal may use electronic communication, as this term is defined by law, with currently enrolled students only about matters within the scope of the employee's professional responsibilities.

Unless an exception has been made in accordance with the employee handbook or other administrative regulations, an employee shall not use a personal electronic communication platform, application, or account to communicate with currently enrolled students.



EMPLOYEE STANDARDS OF CONDUCT

DH  
(LOCAL)

Unless authorized above, all other employees are prohibited from using electronic communication directly with students who are currently enrolled in the District. The employee handbook or other administrative regulations shall further detail:

1. Exceptions for family and social relationships;
2. The circumstances under which an employee may use text messaging to communicate with individual students or student groups;
3. Hours of the day during which electronic communication is discouraged or prohibited; and
4. Other matters deemed appropriate by the Superintendent or designee.

In accordance with ethical standards applicable to all District employees [see DH(EXHIBIT)], an employee shall be prohibited from using electronic communications in a manner that constitutes prohibited harassment or abuse of a District student; adversely affects the student's learning, mental health, or safety; includes threats of violence against the student; reveals confidential information about the student; or constitutes an inappropriate communication with a student, as described in the Educators' Code of Ethics.

An employee shall have no expectation of privacy in electronic communications with students. Each employee shall comply with the District's requirements for records retention and destruction to the extent those requirements apply to electronic communication. [See CPC]

**Personal Use**

All employees shall be held to the same professional standards in their public use of electronic communication as for any other public conduct. If an employee's use of electronic communication violates state or federal law or District policy, or interferes with the employee's ability to effectively perform his or her job duties, the employee is subject to disciplinary action, up to and including termination of employment.

**Reporting Improper Communication**

In accordance with administrative regulations, an employee shall notify his or her supervisor when a student engages in improper electronic communication with the employee.

**Disclosing Personal Information**

An employee shall not be required to disclose his or her personal email address or personal phone number to a student.

**Safety Requirements**

Each employee shall adhere to District safety rules and regulations and shall report unsafe conditions or practices to the appropriate supervisor.

EMPLOYEE STANDARDS OF CONDUCT

DH  
(LOCAL)

**Harassment or Abuse**

An employee shall not engage in prohibited harassment, including sexual harassment, of:

1. Other employees. [See DIA]
2. Students. [See FFH; see FFG regarding child abuse and neglect.]

While acting in the course of employment, an employee shall not engage in prohibited harassment, including sexual harassment, of other persons, including Board members, vendors, contractors, volunteers, or parents.

An employee shall report child abuse or neglect as required by law. [See FFG]

**Relationships with Students**

An employee shall not form romantic or other inappropriate social relationships with students. Any sexual relationship between a student and a District employee is always prohibited, even if consensual. [See FFH]

As required by law, the District shall notify the parent of a student with whom an educator is alleged to have engaged in certain misconduct. [See FFF]

**Tobacco and E-Cigarettes**

An employee shall not smoke or use tobacco products or e-cigarettes on District property, in District vehicles, or at school-related activities. [See also GKA]

**Alcohol and Drugs / Notice of Drug-Free Workplace**

As a condition of employment, an employee shall abide by the terms of the following drug-free workplace provisions. An employee shall notify the Superintendent in writing if the employee is convicted for a violation of a criminal drug statute occurring in the workplace in accordance with Arrests, Indictments, Convictions, and Other Adjudications, below.

An employee shall not manufacture, distribute, dispense, possess, use, or be under the influence of any of the following substances during working hours while on District property or at school-related activities during or outside of usual working hours:

1. Any controlled substance or dangerous drug as defined by law, including but not limited to marijuana, any narcotic drug, hallucinogen, stimulant, depressant, amphetamine, or barbiturate.
2. Alcohol or any alcoholic beverage.
3. Any abusable glue, aerosol paint, or any other chemical substance for inhalation.

EMPLOYEE STANDARDS OF CONDUCT

DH  
(LOCAL)

4. Any other intoxicant or mood-changing, mind-altering, or behavior-altering drug.

An employee need not be legally intoxicated to be considered “under the influence” of a controlled substance.

Exceptions

It shall not be considered a violation of this policy if the employee:

1. Manufactures, possesses, or dispenses a substance listed above as part of the employee’s job responsibilities;
2. Uses or possesses a controlled substance or drug authorized by a licensed physician prescribed for the employee’s personal use; or
3. Possesses a controlled substance or drug that a licensed physician has prescribed for the employee’s child or other individual for whom the employee is a legal guardian.

Sanctions

An employee who violates these drug-free workplace provisions shall be subject to disciplinary sanctions. Sanctions may include:

1. Referral to drug and alcohol counseling or rehabilitation programs;
2. Referral to employee assistance programs;
3. Termination from employment with the District; and
4. Referral to appropriate law enforcement officials for prosecution.

Notice

Employees shall receive a copy of this policy.

**Arrests, Indictments,  
Convictions, and  
Other Adjudications**

An employee shall notify his or her principal or immediate supervisor within three calendar days of any arrest, indictment, conviction, no contest or guilty plea, or other adjudication of the employee for any felony, any offense involving moral turpitude, and any of the other offenses as indicated below:

1. Crimes involving school property or funds;
2. Crimes involving attempt by fraudulent or unauthorized means to obtain or alter any certificate or permit that would entitle any person to hold or obtain a position as an educator;
3. Crimes that occur wholly or in part on school property or at a school-sponsored activity; or
4. Crimes involving moral turpitude, which include:
  - Dishonesty; fraud; deceit; theft; misrepresentation;

EMPLOYEE STANDARDS OF CONDUCT

DH  
(LOCAL)

- Deliberate violence;
- Base, vile, or depraved acts that are intended to arouse or gratify the sexual desire of the actor;
- Felony possession or conspiracy to possess, or any misdemeanor or felony transfer, sale, distribution, or conspiracy to transfer, sell, or distribute any controlled substance defined in Chapter 481 of the Health and Safety Code;
- Acts constituting public intoxication, operating a motor vehicle while under the influence of alcohol, or disorderly conduct, if any two or more acts are committed within any 12-month period; or
- Acts constituting abuse or neglect under the Texas Family Code.

**Dress and Grooming** An employee's dress and grooming shall be clean, neat, in a manner appropriate for his or her assignment, and in accordance with any additional standards established by his or her supervisor and approved by the Superintendent.

## **Educators' Code of Ethics**

The Texas educator shall comply with standard practices and ethical conduct toward students, professional colleagues, school officials, parents, and members of the community and shall safeguard academic freedom. The Texas educator, in maintaining the dignity of the profession, shall respect and obey the law, demonstrate personal integrity, and exemplify honesty. The Texas educator, in exemplifying ethical relations with colleagues, shall extend just and equitable treatment to all members of the profession. The Texas educator, in accepting a position of public trust, shall measure success by the progress of each student toward realization of his or her potential as an effective citizen. The Texas educator, in fulfilling responsibilities in the community, shall cooperate with parents and others to improve the public schools of the community. *19 TAC 247.1*

### **Professional Ethical Conduct, Practices, and Performance**

Standard 1.1. The educator shall not intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly engage in deceptive practices regarding official policies of the school district, educational institution, educator preparation program, the Texas Education Agency, or the State Board for Educator Certification (SBEC) and its certification process.

Standard 1.2. The educator shall not intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly misappropriate, divert, or use monies, personnel, property, or equipment committed to his or her charge for personal gain or advantage.

Standard 1.3. The educator shall not submit fraudulent requests for reimbursement, expenses, or pay.

Standard 1.4. The educator shall not use institutional or professional privileges for personal or partisan advantage.

Standard 1.5. The educator shall neither accept nor offer gratuities, gifts, or favors that impair professional judgment or that are used to obtain special advantage. This standard shall not restrict the acceptance of gifts or tokens offered and accepted openly from students, parents of students, or other persons or organizations in recognition or appreciation of service.

Standard 1.6. The educator shall not falsify records, or direct or coerce others to do so.

Standard 1.7. The educator shall comply with state regulations, written local school board policies, and other state and federal laws.

Standard 1.8. The educator shall apply for, accept, offer, or assign a position or a responsibility on the basis of professional qualifications.

Standard 1.9. The educator shall not make threats of violence against school district employees, school board members, students, or parents of students.

Standard 1.10. The educator shall be of good moral character and be worthy to instruct or supervise the youth of this state.

Standard 1.11. The educator shall not intentionally or knowingly misrepresent his or her employment history, criminal history, and/or disciplinary record when applying for subsequent employment.

Standard 1.12. The educator shall refrain from the illegal use, abuse, or distribution of controlled substances, prescription drugs, and toxic inhalants.

Standard 1.13. The educator shall not be under the influence of alcohol or consume alcoholic beverages on school property or during school activities when students are present.

### **Ethical Conduct Toward Professional Colleagues**

Standard 2.1. The educator shall not reveal confidential health or personnel information concerning colleagues unless disclosure serves lawful professional purposes or is required by law.

Standard 2.2. The educator shall not harm others by knowingly making false statements about a colleague or the school system.

Standard 2.3. The educator shall adhere to written local school board policies and state and federal laws regarding the hiring, evaluation, and dismissal of personnel.

Standard 2.4. The educator shall not interfere with a colleague's exercise of political, professional, or citizenship rights and responsibilities.

Standard 2.5. The educator shall not discriminate against or coerce a colleague on the basis of race, color, religion, national origin, age, gender, disability, family status, or sexual orientation.

Standard 2.6. The educator shall not use coercive means or promise of special treatment in order to influence professional decisions or colleagues.

Standard 2.7. The educator shall not retaliate against any individual who has filed a complaint with the SBEC or who provides information for a disciplinary investigation or proceeding under this chapter.

Standard 2.8. The educator shall not intentionally or knowingly subject a colleague to sexual harassment.

### **Ethical Conduct Toward Students**

Standard 3.1. The educator shall not reveal confidential information concerning students unless disclosure serves lawful professional purposes or is required by law.

Standard 3.2. The educator shall not intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly treat a student or minor in a manner that adversely affects or endangers the learning, physical health, mental health, or safety of the student or minor.

Standard 3.3. The educator shall not intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly misrepresent facts regarding a student.

EMPLOYEE STANDARDS OF CONDUCT

DH  
(EXHIBIT)

Standard 3.4. The educator shall not exclude a student from participation in a program, deny benefits to a student, or grant an advantage to a student on the basis of race, color, gender, disability, national origin, religion, family status, or sexual orientation.

Standard 3.5. The educator shall not intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly engage in physical mistreatment, neglect, or abuse of a student or minor.

Standard 3.6. The educator shall not solicit or engage in sexual conduct or a romantic relationship with a student or minor.

Standard 3.7. The educator shall not furnish alcohol or illegal/unauthorized drugs to any person under 21 years of age unless the educator is a parent or guardian of that child or knowingly allow any person under 21 years of age unless the educator is a parent or guardian of that child to consume alcohol or illegal/unauthorized drugs in the presence of the educator.

Standard 3.8. The educator shall maintain appropriate professional educator-student relationships and boundaries based on a reasonably prudent educator standard.

Standard 3.9. The educator shall refrain from inappropriate communication with a student or minor, including, but not limited to, electronic communication such as cell phone, text messaging, email, instant messaging, blogging, or other social network communication. Factors that may be considered in assessing whether the communication is inappropriate include, but are not limited to:

1. The nature, purpose, timing, and amount of the communication;
2. The subject matter of the communication;
3. Whether the communication was made openly or the educator attempted to conceal the communication;
4. Whether the communication could be reasonably interpreted as soliciting sexual contact or a romantic relationship;
5. Whether the communication was sexually explicit; and
6. Whether the communication involved discussion(s) of the physical or sexual attractiveness or the sexual history, activities, preferences, or fantasies of either the educator or the student.

*19 TAC 247.2*



---

**Note:** This policy applies to a district of innovation under Education Code, Chapter 12A. [See AF]

---

**Permissive Reports**

The superintendent may notify the State Board for Educator Certification (SBEC) of any educator misconduct that he or she believes in good faith may be subject to sanctions under 19 Administrative Code, Chapter 249, Disciplinary Proceedings, Sanctions, and Contested Cases, and/or Chapter 247, Educators' Code of Ethics. 19 TAC 249.14(d)

**Required Reports**

A superintendent shall notify SBEC if:

1. An educator employed by or seeking employment with the district, or an applicant or holder of an SBEC certificate, has a criminal record and the district obtained information about the educator's criminal record by a means other than the criminal history clearinghouse established by the Texas Department of Public Safety under Government Code 411.0845;
2. An educator's employment at the district was terminated and there is evidence that the educator engaged in misconduct listed below [see Reportable Misconduct, below];
3. The educator submitted a notice of resignation and there is evidence that the educator engaged in misconduct listed below [see Reportable Misconduct, below]; or
4. The educator engaged in conduct that violated the assessment instrument security procedures established under Education Code 39.0301.

*Education Code 21.006, 22.087; 19 TAC 249.14(d)*

**Reportable Misconduct**

A superintendent shall make a report to SBEC under items 2 and 3, above, if an educator was terminated or resigned and there is evidence that the educator:

1. Sexually or physically abused a student or minor or engaged in any other illegal conduct with a student or minor;
2. Possessed, transferred, sold, or distributed a controlled substance, as defined by Health and Safety Code Chapter 481 or by 21 U.S.C. 801 et seq.;
3. Illegally transferred, appropriated, or expended school property or funds;
4. Attempted by fraudulent or unauthorized means to obtain or alter any certificate or permit that would entitle the individual

to be employed in a position requiring such certificate or permit or to receive additional compensation associated with a position;

5. Committed a crime, any part of such crime having occurred on school property or at a school-sponsored event; or
6. Solicited or engaged in sexual conduct or a romantic relationship with a student or minor.

*Education Code 21.006(b); 19 TAC 249.14(d)*

**Investigation**

A superintendent shall complete an investigation of an educator that involves evidence that the educator may have engaged in misconduct described above at Reportable Misconduct, items 1 and 2, despite the educator's resignation from employment before completion of the investigation. *Education Code 21.006(b-1); 19 TAC 249.14(d)(3)(C)*

**Deadline to Report**

The superintendent shall promptly notify SBEC in writing by filing a report within seven business days after the date the superintendent receives a report from a principal [see DP(LEGAL)] or knew of the circumstances described above. *Education Code 21.006(c); 19 TAC 249.14(d)* [See Required Reports, above]

**Contents of Report**

The report must be in writing and in a form prescribed by SBEC. The report shall include the name or names of any student or minor who is the victim of abuse or unlawful conduct by an educator and the factual circumstances requiring the report and the subject of the report by providing the following available information:

1. Name and any aliases;
2. Certificate number, if any, or social security number;
3. Last known mailing address and home and daytime phone numbers;
4. All available contact information for any alleged victim or victims;
5. Name or names and any available contact information of any relevant witnesses to the circumstances requiring the report;
6. Current employment status of the subject, including any information about proposed termination, notice of resignation, or pending employment actions; and
7. Involvement by a law enforcement or other agency, including the name of the agency.

*Education Code 21.006(c-1); 19 TAC 249.14(f)*

EMPLOYEE STANDARDS OF CONDUCT  
REPORTS TO STATE BOARD FOR EDUCATOR CERTIFICATION

DHB  
(LEGAL)

	The name of the student or minor is not public information under the Public Information Act. [See GBAA] <i>Education Code 21.006(h)</i>
<b>Notice</b>	
To the Board and Educator	A superintendent shall notify the board and the educator of the filing of a written report with SBEC. The superintendent shall notify the board before filing the report. <i>Education Code 21.006(d); 19 TAC 249.14(d)(3)(B)</i>
Before Accepting Resignation	Before accepting an employee's resignation that requires filing a report, the superintendent shall inform the educator in writing that a report will be filed and that sanctions against his or her certificate may result as a consequence. <i>19 TAC 249.14(d)(3)(A)</i>
<b>Policy to Notify Parents</b>	The board shall adopt a policy under which notice is provided to the parent or guardian of a student with whom an educator is alleged to have abused or otherwise committed an unlawful act with a student or minor. [See FFF] <i>Education Code 21.0061</i>
<b>Sanctions for Failure to Report</b>	SBEC shall determine whether to impose sanctions, including an administrative penalty against a superintendent who fails to file a report. <i>Education Code 21.006(f); 19 TAC 249.14(d), (h), .15(b)(4)</i>
Administrative Penalty	If a superintendent is required to file a report and fails to file the report by the required date, SBEC may impose an administrative penalty of not less than \$500 and not more than \$10,000. SBEC may not renew the certification of an educator against whom an administrative penalty is imposed until the penalty is paid. <i>Education Code 21.006(i)</i>
<b>Criminal Offense</b>	A superintendent required to file a report commits a state jail felony if the superintendent fails to file the report by the required date with intent to conceal an educator's criminal record or alleged incident of misconduct. <i>Education Code 21.006(j)</i>
<b>Immunity</b>	A superintendent or principal who, in good faith and while acting in an official capacity, files a report with SBEC or communicates with another superintendent or principal concerning an educator's criminal record or alleged incident of misconduct is immune from civil or criminal liability that might otherwise be incurred or imposed. <i>Education Code 21.006(e)</i>
<b>Definitions</b>	"Abuse" includes the following acts or omissions:
"Abuse"	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Mental or emotional injury to a student or minor that results in an observable and material impairment in the student's or minor's development, learning, or psychological functioning;</li><li>2. Causing or permitting a student or minor to be in a situation in which the student or minor sustains a mental or emotional injury that results in an observable and material impairment in</li></ol>

the student's or minor's development, learning, or psychological functioning;

3. Physical injury that results in substantial harm to a student or minor, or the genuine threat of substantial harm from physical injury to the student or minor, including an injury that is at variance with the history or explanation given and excluding an accident or reasonable discipline; or
4. Sexual conduct harmful to a student's or minor's mental, emotional, or physical welfare.

*19 TAC 249.3(1)*

"Reported Criminal History"

"Reported criminal history" means information concerning any formal criminal justice system charges and dispositions. The term includes arrests, detentions, indictments, criminal informations, convictions, deferred adjudications, and probations in any state or federal jurisdiction. *19 TAC 249.3(44)*

"Solicitation of a Romantic Relationship"

"Solicitation of a romantic relationship" means deliberate or repeated acts that can be reasonably interpreted as the solicitation by an educator of a relationship with a student that is romantic in nature. A romantic relationship is often characterized by a strong emotional or sexual attachment and/or patterns of exclusivity, but does not include appropriate educator-student relationships that arise out of legitimate contexts such as familial connections or longtime acquaintance. The following acts, considered in context, may constitute prima facie evidence of the solicitation by an educator of a romantic relationship with a student:

1. Behavior, gestures, expressions, or communications with a student that are unrelated to the educator's job duties and evidence a romantic intent or interest in the student, including statements of love, affection, or attraction. Factors that may be considered in determining the romantic intent of such communications or behavior include:
  - a. The nature of the communications;
  - b. The timing of the communications;
  - c. The extent of the communications;
  - d. Whether the communications were made openly or secretly;
  - e. The extent that the educator attempts to conceal the communications;

- f. If the educator claims to be counseling a student, SBEC may consider whether the educator's job duties included counseling, whether the educator reported the subject of the counseling to the student's guardians or to the appropriate school personnel, or, in the case of alleged abuse or neglect, whether the educator reported the abuse or neglect to the appropriate authorities; and
  - g. Any other evidence tending to show the context of the communications between educator and student.
2. Making inappropriate comments about a student's body, creating or transmitting sexually suggestive photographs or images, or encouraging the student to transmit sexually suggestive photographs or images.
  3. Making sexually demeaning comments to a student.
  4. Making comments about a student's potential sexual performance.
  5. Requesting details of a student's sexual history.
  6. Requesting a date, sexual contact, or any activity intended for the sexual gratification of the educator.
  7. Engaging in conversations regarding the sexual problems, preferences, or fantasies of either party.
  8. Inappropriate hugging, kissing, or excessive touching.
  9. Providing the student with drugs or alcohol.
  10. Violating written directives from school administrators regarding the educator's behavior toward a student.
  11. Suggestions that a romantic relationship is desired after the student graduates, including post-graduation plans for dating or marriage.
  12. Any other acts tending to show that the educator solicited a romantic relationship with the student.

*19 TAC 249.3(51)*

**Searches—General Rule**

Citizens, including district employees, have a right to be free from unreasonable searches and seizures. *U.S. Const. Amendment IV; Tex. Const. Art. I, Sec. 9*

A district may search an employee or an employee’s property if:

1. There are reasonable grounds to believe that the search will turn up evidence that the employee is guilty of work-related misconduct; and
2. The search is reasonably related in scope to the circumstances that justified the interference in the first place.

*O’Connor v. Ortega*, 480 U.S. 709 (1987); *New Jersey v. T.L.O.*, 469 U.S. 325 (1985)

In addition, a district may search an employee’s workplace for non-investigatory, work-related purposes, if there are reasonable grounds to believe that the search will turn up evidence that the employee is guilty of work-related misconduct. *O’Connor v. Ortega*, 480 U.S. 709 (1987)

Drug/Alcohol Testing

Blood, urine, and breath tests of public employees to determine drug use are searches under the Fourth Amendment of the U.S. Constitution. *Skinner v. Railway Labor Executives Ass’n*, 489 U.S. 602 (1989)

Random Drug Testing

A district may conduct drug tests, without a warrant and without individualized suspicion, when the test serves special governmental needs that outweigh the individual’s privacy expectation. *Skinner v. Railway Labor Executives Ass’n*, 489 U.S. 602 (1989); *Nat’l Treasury Employees Union v. Von Raab*, 489 U.S. 656 (1989)

*Safety-Sensitive Positions*

Random alcohol and drug testing of employees in “safety-sensitive” positions may be permissible when the intrusiveness of the search is minimal and a board is able to demonstrate that the drug-testing program furthers its interest in ensuring the physical safety of students. “Safety-sensitive” positions include those that involve the handling of potentially dangerous equipment or hazardous substances in an environment including a large number of children. *Aubrey v. Sch. Bd. of LaFayette Parish*, 148 F.3d 559 (5th Cir. 1998)

---

**Note:** The following testing requirements apply to employees who operate commercial motor vehicles and are subject to commercial driver’s license requirements in accordance with federal regulations.

---

<b>Testing of Drivers</b>	<p>A district shall conduct testing, in accordance with federal regulations, of commercial motor vehicle operators for use of alcohol or a controlled substance that violates law or federal regulation. <i>49 U.S.C. 31306; 49 C.F.R. Part 382</i></p>
Commercial Motor Vehicle Defined	<p>A commercial motor vehicle is defined as a motor vehicle used to transport passengers or property that:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Has a gross combination weight rating of 26,001 or more pounds inclusive of a towed unit with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 10,000 pounds;</li><li>2. Has a gross vehicle weight rating of 26,001 or more pounds; or</li><li>3. Is designed to transport 16 or more passengers, including the driver.</li></ol> <p><i>49 C.F.R. 382.107</i></p>
Testing Procedures	<p>A district shall ensure that all alcohol or controlled substances testing conducted under 49 C.F.R. Part 382 complies with the procedures set forth in 49 C.F.R. Part 40. <i>49 C.F.R. 382.105</i></p> <p>U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) tests must be completely separate from non-DOT tests in all respects. DOT tests must take priority and must be conducted and completed before a non-DOT test is begun. <i>49 C.F.R. 40.13</i></p>
Tests Required	<p>Required testing includes pre-employment, post-accident, random, reasonable suspicion, return-to-duty, and follow-up testing. No driver shall refuse to submit to a post-accident alcohol or controlled substances test, a random alcohol or controlled substances test, a reasonable suspicion alcohol or controlled substances test, or a return-to-duty or follow-up alcohol or controlled substances test. A district shall not permit a driver who refuses to submit to such tests to perform or continue to perform safety-sensitive functions. <i>49 C.F.R. 382.211, .309</i></p>
Education and Treatment	<p>A district is not required to provide an evaluation by a substance abuse professional or any subsequent recommended education or treatment for an employee who has violated a drug and alcohol regulation of the DOT.</p> <p>However, if a district offers an employee an opportunity to return to a safety-sensitive duty following a violation, the district must, before the employee again performs that duty, ensure that the employee receives an evaluation by a substance abuse professional and that the employee successfully complies with the professional's evaluation recommendations. <i>49 C.F.R. 40.289</i></p>



EMPLOYEE STANDARDS OF CONDUCT  
SEARCHES AND ALCOHOL/DRUG TESTING

DHE  
(LEGAL)

Return-to-Duty  
Testing

If a district permits an employee who has violated a DOT drug and alcohol regulation to return to safety-sensitive functions, the district must ensure that the employee takes a return-to-duty test. This test cannot occur until after the substance abuse professional has determined that the employee has successfully complied with prescribed education and/or treatment. The employee must have a negative drug test result and/or an alcohol test with an alcohol concentration of less than 0.02 before resuming performance of safety-sensitive duties.

A district is not required to return an employee to safety-sensitive duties because the employee has met the conditions described in the preceding paragraph. Return-to-duty is a personnel decision that the district has the discretion to make subject to legal requirements.

*49 C.F.R. 40.305(a)–(b)*

Educational  
Materials

A district shall provide educational materials that explain the federal requirements and the district's policies and procedures with respect to meeting these requirements. The district shall ensure that a copy of these materials is distributed to each driver before the start of alcohol and controlled substances testing under this policy and to each driver subsequently hired or transferred into a position that requires driving a commercial motor vehicle. Written notice to representatives of employee organizations of the availability of this information shall also be provided. The materials shall include detailed discussion of at least the items listed at 49 C.F.R. 382.601.

*49 C.F.R. 382.601*

Reports

A district required by federal safety regulations to conduct alcohol and drug testing of an employee who holds a commercial driver's license shall report the following information to the Department of Public Safety:

1. A valid positive result on an alcohol or drug test and whether the specimen producing the result was a dilute specimen. "Valid positive result" means an alcohol concentration of 0.04 or greater on an alcohol confirmation test, or a result at or above the cutoff concentration levels listed in 49 C.F.R. 40.87 on a confirmation drug test. "Dilute specimen" means a specimen with creatinine and specific gravity values that are lower than expected for human urine.
2. A refusal to provide a specimen for an alcohol or drug test.
3. An adulterated specimen or substituted specimen, as defined at 49 C.F.R. 40.3, on an alcohol or drug test.

EMPLOYEE STANDARDS OF CONDUCT  
SEARCHES AND ALCOHOL/DRUG TESTING

DHE  
(LEGAL)

For purposes of this requirement, the term “employee” includes applicants for employment subject to pre-employment testing.

*Trans. Code 644.251–.252; 49 C.F.R. 40.3*

---

**Note:** This policy addresses harassment of district employees. For legally referenced material relating to discrimination and retaliation, see DAA(LEGAL). For harassment of students, see FFH. For reporting requirements related to child abuse and neglect, see FFG.

---

**Official Oppression**

A public servant acting under color of the public servant's office or employment commits an offense if the public servant intentionally subjects another to sexual harassment.

A public servant acts under color of the public servant's office or employment if the person acts or purports to act in an official capacity or takes advantage of such actual or purported capacity.

"Sexual harassment" means unwelcome sexual advances, requests for sexual favors, or other verbal or physical conduct of a sexual nature, submission to which is made a term or condition of a person's exercise or enjoyment of any right, privilege, power, or immunity, either explicitly or implicitly.

*Penal Code 39.03(a)(3), (b), (c)*

**Harassment of Employees**

Harassment on the basis of a protected characteristic is a violation of the federal anti-discrimination laws. A district has an affirmative duty, under Title VII, to maintain a working environment free of harassment on the basis of sex, race, color, religion, and national origin. *42 U.S.C. 2000e, et seq.; 29 C.F.R. 1606.8(a), 1604.11*

Harassment violates Title VII if it is sufficiently severe and pervasive to alter the conditions of employment. *Pennsylvania State Police v. Suders, 542 U.S. 129 (2004)*

Title VII does not prohibit all verbal and physical harassment in the workplace. For example, harassment between men and women is not automatically unlawful sexual harassment merely because the words used have sexual content or connotations. *Oncale v. Sun-downer Offshore Services, Inc., 523 U.S. 75 (1998)*

**Hostile Environment**

Verbal or physical conduct based on a person's sex, race, color, religion, or national origin constitutes unlawful harassment when the conduct:

1. Has the purpose or effect of creating an intimidating, hostile, or offensive working environment;
2. Has the purpose or effect of unreasonably interfering with an individual's work performance; or
3. Otherwise adversely affects an individual's employment opportunities.

*Pennsylvania State Police v. Suders*, 542 U.S. 129 (2004); *Nat'l Railroad Passenger Corp. v. Morgan*, 536 U.S. 101 (2002); *Meritor Savings Bank v. Vinson*, 477 U.S. 57 (1986); 29 C.F.R. 1604.11, 1606.8

Quid Pro Quo

Conduct of a sexual nature also constitutes harassment when:

1. Submission to such conduct is made either explicitly or implicitly a term or condition of an individual's employment; or
2. Submission to or rejection of such conduct by an individual is used as the basis for employment decisions affecting the individual.

29 C.F.R. 1604.11(a)

Same-Sex Sexual Harassment

Same-sex sexual harassment constitutes sexual harassment. *Oncale v. Sundowner Offshore Services, Inc.*, 523 U.S. 75 (1998)

**Harassment Policy**

A district should take all steps necessary to prevent sexual harassment from occurring, such as affirmatively raising the subject, expressing strong disapproval, developing appropriate penalties, informing employees of their right to raise and how to raise the issue of harassment under Title VII, and developing methods to sensitize all concerned. 29 C.F.R. 1604.11(f)

**Corrective Action**

A district is responsible for acts of unlawful harassment by fellow employees and by nonemployees if the district, its agents, or its supervisory employees knew or should have known of the conduct, unless the district takes immediate and appropriate corrective action. 29 C.F.R. 1604.11(d), (e), 1606.8(d), (e)

When no tangible employment action is taken, a district may raise the following affirmative defense:

1. That the district exercised reasonable care to prevent and promptly correct any harassing behavior; and
2. That the employee unreasonably failed to take advantage of any preventive or corrective opportunities provided by the employer or to avoid harm otherwise.

*Burlington Industries, Inc. v. Ellerth*, 524 U.S. 742 (1998); *Faragher v. City of Boca Raton*, 524 U.S. 775 (1998)

**Harassment of Unpaid Interns**

A district commits an unlawful employment practice if sexual harassment of an unpaid intern occurs and the district or its agents or supervisors know or should have known that the conduct constituting sexual harassment was occurring, and fail to take immediate and appropriate corrective action. *Labor Code 21.1065*

---

**Note:** This policy addresses discrimination, harassment, and retaliation involving District employees. For discrimination, harassment, and retaliation involving students, see FFH. For reporting requirements related to child abuse and neglect, see FFG.

---

**Definitions** Solely for purposes of this policy, the term “employee” includes former employees, applicants for employment, and unpaid interns.

**Statement of Nondiscrimination** The District prohibits discrimination, including harassment, against any employee on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, gender, national origin, age, disability, or any other basis prohibited by law. Retaliation against anyone involved in the complaint process is a violation of District policy.

**Discrimination** Discrimination against an employee is defined as conduct directed at an employee on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, gender, national origin, age, disability, or any other basis prohibited by law, that adversely affects the employee’s employment.

**Harassment** Prohibited harassment of an employee is defined as physical, verbal, or nonverbal conduct based on an employee’s race, color, religion, sex, gender, national origin, age, disability, or any other basis prohibited by law, when the conduct is so severe, persistent, or pervasive that the conduct:

1. Has the purpose or effect of unreasonably interfering with the employee’s work performance;
2. Creates an intimidating, threatening, hostile, or offensive work environment; or
3. Otherwise adversely affects the employee’s performance, environment, or employment opportunities.

**Examples** Examples of prohibited harassment may include offensive or derogatory language directed at another person’s religious beliefs or practices, accent, skin color, gender identity, or need for workplace accommodation; threatening or intimidating conduct; offensive jokes, name calling, slurs, or rumors; physical aggression or assault; display of graffiti or printed material promoting racial, ethnic, or other stereotypes; or other types of aggressive conduct such as theft or damage to property.

**Sexual Harassment** Sexual harassment is a form of sex discrimination defined as unwelcome sexual advances; requests for sexual favors; sexually motivated physical, verbal, or nonverbal conduct; or other conduct or communication of a sexual nature when:

EMPLOYEE WELFARE  
FREEDOM FROM DISCRIMINATION, HARASSMENT, AND RETALIATION

DIA  
(LOCAL)

1. Submission to the conduct is either explicitly or implicitly a condition of an employee's employment, or when submission to or rejection of the conduct is the basis for an employment action affecting the employee; or
2. The conduct is so severe, persistent, or pervasive that it has the purpose or effect of unreasonably interfering with the employee's work performance or creates an intimidating, threatening, hostile, or offensive work environment.

**Examples** Examples of sexual harassment may include sexual advances; touching intimate body parts; coercing or forcing a sexual act on another; jokes or conversations of a sexual nature; and other sexually motivated conduct, communication, or contact.

**Retaliation** The District prohibits retaliation against an employee who makes a claim alleging to have experienced discrimination or harassment, or another employee who, in good faith, makes a report, serves as a witness, or otherwise participates in an investigation.

**Examples** Examples of retaliation may include termination, refusal to hire, demotion, and denial of promotion. Retaliation may also include threats, unjustified negative evaluations, unjustified negative references, or increased surveillance.

**Prohibited Conduct** In this policy, the term "prohibited conduct" includes discrimination, harassment, and retaliation as defined by this policy, even if the behavior does not rise to the level of unlawful conduct.

**Reporting Procedures** An employee who believes that he or she has experienced prohibited conduct or believes that another employee has experienced prohibited conduct should immediately report the alleged acts. The employee may report the alleged acts to his or her supervisor or campus principal.

Alternatively, the employee may report the alleged acts to one of the District officials below.

**Definition of District Officials** For the purposes of this policy, District officials are the Title IX coordinator, the ADA/Section 504 coordinator, and the Superintendent.

**Title IX Coordinator** Reports of discrimination based on sex, including sexual harassment, may be directed to the designated Title IX coordinator. [See DIA(EXHIBIT)]

**ADA / Section 504 Coordinator** Reports of discrimination based on disability may be directed to the designated ADA/Section 504 coordinator. [See DIA(EXHIBIT)]

**Superintendent** The Superintendent shall serve as coordinator for purposes of District compliance with all other antidiscrimination laws.

**Alternative Reporting Procedures**

An employee shall not be required to report prohibited conduct to the person alleged to have committed it. Reports concerning prohibited conduct, including reports against the Title IX coordinator or ADA/Section 504 coordinator, may be directed to the Superintendent.

A report against the Superintendent may be made directly to the Board. If a report is made directly to the Board, the Board shall appoint an appropriate person to conduct an investigation.

**Timely Reporting**

Reports of prohibited conduct shall be made as soon as possible after the alleged act or knowledge of the alleged act. A failure to promptly report may impair the District's ability to investigate and address the prohibited conduct.

**Notice of Report**

Any District supervisor who receives a report of prohibited conduct shall immediately notify the appropriate District official listed above and take any other steps required by this policy.

**Investigation of the Report**

The District may request, but shall not insist upon, a written report. If a report is made orally, the District official shall reduce the report to written form.

Upon receipt or notice of a report, the District official shall determine whether the allegations, if proven, would constitute prohibited conduct as defined by this policy. If so, the District official shall immediately authorize or undertake an investigation, regardless of whether a criminal or regulatory investigation regarding the same or similar allegations is pending.

If appropriate, the District shall promptly take interim action calculated to prevent prohibited conduct during the course of an investigation.

The investigation may be conducted by the District official or a designee, such as the campus principal, or by a third party designated by the District, such as an attorney. When appropriate, the campus principal or supervisor shall be involved in or informed of the investigation.

The investigation may consist of personal interviews with the person making the report, the person against whom the report is filed, and others with knowledge of the circumstances surrounding the allegations. The investigation may also include analysis of other information or documents related to the allegations.

**Concluding the Investigation**

Absent extenuating circumstances, the investigation should be completed within ten District business days from the date of the report; however, the investigator shall take additional time if necessary to complete a thorough investigation.



EMPLOYEE WELFARE  
FREEDOM FROM DISCRIMINATION, HARASSMENT, AND RETALIATION

DIA  
(LOCAL)

The investigator shall prepare a written report of the investigation. The report shall be filed with the District official overseeing the investigation.

**District Action**

If the results of an investigation indicate that prohibited conduct occurred, the District shall promptly respond by taking appropriate disciplinary or corrective action reasonably calculated to address the conduct.

The District may take action based on the results of an investigation, even if the conduct did not rise to the level of prohibited or unlawful conduct.

**Confidentiality**

To the greatest extent possible, the District shall respect the privacy of the complainant, persons against whom a report is filed, and witnesses. Limited disclosures may be necessary in order to conduct a thorough investigation and comply with applicable law.

**Appeal**

A complainant who is dissatisfied with the outcome of the investigation may appeal through DGBA(LOCAL), beginning at the appropriate level.

The complainant may have a right to file a complaint with appropriate state or federal agencies.

**Records Retention**

Copies of reports alleging prohibited conduct, investigation reports, and related records shall be maintained by the District for a period of at least three years. [See CPC]

**Access to Policy**

This policy shall be distributed annually to District employees. Copies of the policy shall be readily available at each campus and the District administrative offices.

PERSONNEL POSITIONS

DP  
(LEGAL)

<b>Principal</b>	A board, by local policy, shall adopt qualifications for principals. <i>Education Code 11.202(c)</i>
Qualifications	
Certification	State Board for Educator Certification (SBEC) rules establish the requirements for receiving a principal certificate and for first-time principals in Texas. <i>19 TAC Ch. 241</i>
Duties	<p>The principal shall be the instructional leader of the school and shall be provided with adequate training and personnel assistance to assume that role. <i>Education Code 11.202(a)</i></p> <p>A principal shall:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Approve all teacher and staff appointments for the campus. [See DK]</li><li>2. Set specific education objectives for the campus, through the planning process.</li><li>3. Develop budgets for the campus.</li><li>4. Assume administrative responsibility and instructional leadership, under the supervision of the superintendent, for discipline at the campus.</li><li>5. Assign, evaluate, and promote all personnel assigned to the campus.</li><li>6. Recommend to the superintendent the termination, suspension, or nonrenewal of an employee assigned to the campus.</li><li>7. Perform any other duties assigned by the superintendent pursuant to board policy.</li><li>8. Regularly consult with the campus-level committee in the planning, operation, supervision, and evaluation of the campus educational program. [See BQ series]</li><li>9. Each school year, with the assistance of the campus-level committee, develop, review, and revise the campus improvement plan. [See BQ]</li><li>10. (For high school principals only) Serve, or appoint someone to serve, as deputy registrar for the county in which the school is located. <i>Election Code 13.046</i></li></ol> <p><i>Education Code 11.202(b), .253(c), (h)</i> [See also DMA]</p>
Principal's Report to Superintendent	A principal must notify the superintendent not later than the seventh business day after the date:

PERSONNEL POSITIONS

DP  
(LEGAL)

1. Of an educator's termination of employment or resignation following an alleged incident of misconduct under Education Code 21.006(b); or
2. The principal knew about an educator's criminal record under Education Code 21.006(b)(1).

*Education Code 21.006(b-2); 19 TAC 249.14(e)* [See Required Reports at DHB]

*Sanctions and  
Administrative  
Penalty*

SBEC determines whether to impose sanctions, including an administrative penalty, against a principal who fails to provide notification to a superintendent. *Education Code 21.006(f); 19 TAC 249.14(e), (h)*

If a principal is required to notify a superintendent about an educator's criminal record or alleged incident of misconduct and fails to provide the notice by the required date, SBEC may impose an administrative penalty of not less than \$500 and not more than \$10,000. SBEC may not renew the certification of an educator against whom an administrative penalty is imposed until the penalty is paid. *Education Code 21.006 (i)*

*Criminal Offense*

A principal required to notify a superintendent about an educator's criminal record or alleged incident of misconduct commits a state jail felony if the principal fails to provide the notice by the required date with intent to conceal an educator's criminal record or alleged incident of misconduct. *Education Code 21.006(j)*

Courses in the foundation and enrichment curriculum in grades 6–12 must be provided in a manner that allows all grade promotion and high school graduation requirements to be met in a timely manner. A district is not required to offer a specific course in the foundation and enrichment curriculum except as specified in 19 Administrative Code 74.3. *19 TAC 74.3(c)*

**Grades 6–8**

A district that offers grades 6–8 must provide instruction in the required curriculum as specified in 19 Administrative Code 74.1, relating to essential knowledge and skills. A district must ensure that sufficient time is provided for teachers to teach and for students to learn English language arts, mathematics, science, social studies, at least one of the four disciplines in fine arts (art, dance, music, theatre), health, physical education, technology applications, and to the extent possible, languages other than English. The school district may provide instruction in a variety of arrangements and settings, including mixed-age programs designed to permit flexible learning arrangements for developmentally appropriate instruction for all student populations to support student attainment of course and grade level standards. *19 TAC 74.3(a)(1)*

Physical Activity  
Requirements

A district shall require students in grades 6–8 to participate in moderate or vigorous daily physical activity for at least 30 minutes for at least four semesters during those grade levels as part of the district's physical education curriculum.

A district may as an alternative require a student enrolled in a grade level for which the district uses block scheduling to participate in moderate or vigorous physical activity for at least 225 minutes during each period of two school weeks.

*Exemptions*

A district must provide an exemption for:

1. A student who is unable to participate in the required physical activity because of illness or disability; and
2. A student who participates in an extracurricular activity with a moderate or vigorous physical activity component that is considered a structured activity and meets the requirements for extracurricular activity as defined at 19 Administrative Code 76.1001.

A district may allow an exemption for a student on a middle or junior high school campus participating in a school-related activity or an activity sponsored by a private league or club only if that activity meets each of the following requirements:

1. The activity must be structured;
2. The board must certify the activity; and

3. The student must provide proof of participation in the activity.

A “structured activity” is an activity that meets, at a minimum, each of the following requirements:

1. The activity is based on the grade appropriate movement, physical activity and health, and social development strands of the essential knowledge and skills for physical education specified in 19 Administrative Code Chapter 116; and
2. The activity is organized and monitored by school personnel or by appropriately trained instructors who are part of a program that has been certified by the board.

*Education Code 28.002(l)–(l-1); 19 TAC 103.1003*

Fine Arts  
Requirement

The school district must ensure that, beginning with students who enter grade 6 in the 2010–11 school year, each student completes one Texas Essential Knowledge and Skills-based fine arts course in grade 6, grade 7, or grade 8. *Education Code 28.002(c-1); 19 TAC 74.3(a)(2)*

A district shall offer and maintain evidence that students have the opportunity to take courses in at least three of the four disciplines in fine arts. The requirement to offer three of the four disciplines in fine arts may be reduced to two by the commissioner of education upon application of a school district with a total middle school enrollment of less than 250 students. *19 TAC 74.3(a)(3)*

Instruction in High  
School, College,  
and Career  
Preparation

Each district shall provide instruction to students in grade 7 or 8 in preparing for high school, college, and a career. The instruction must include information regarding:

1. The creation of a high school personal graduation plan under Education Code 28.02121;
2. The distinguished level of achievement described by Education Code 28.025(b-15);
3. Each endorsement described by Education Code 28.025(c-1);
4. College readiness standards; and
5. Potential career choices and the education needed to enter those careers.

A district may provide the instruction as part of an existing course in the required curriculum; provide the instruction as part of an existing career and technology course designated by the State Board of Education (SBOE) as appropriate for that purpose; or establish a new elective course through which to provide the instruction.

*Education Code 28.016*

**High School Courses  
at Earlier Grades**

A district may offer courses designated for grades 9–12 in earlier grade levels. *19 TAC 74.26(b)*

**Grades 9–12 Course  
Offerings**

A district that offers grades 9–12 shall provide instruction in the required curriculum as specified in 19 Administrative Code 74.1. A district shall ensure that sufficient time is provided for teachers to teach and for students to learn the subjects in the required curriculum. *19 TAC 74.3(b)(1)*

A district shall offer the courses listed below in grades 9–12 and shall maintain evidence that students have the opportunity to take these courses:

1. English language arts — English I, II, III, IV, and at least one additional advanced English course.
2. Mathematics — Algebra I, Algebra II, Geometry, Precalculus, and Mathematical Models with Applications.
3. Science — Integrated Physics and Chemistry, Biology, Chemistry, Physics, and at least two additional science courses selected from Aquatic Science, Astronomy, Earth and Space Science, Environmental Systems, Advanced Animal Science, Advanced Biotechnology, Advanced Plant and Soil Science, Anatomy and Physiology, Engineering Design and Problem Solving, Food Science, Forensic Science, Medical Microbiology, Pathophysiology, Scientific Research and Design, and Principles of Engineering.
  - a. The requirement to offer two additional courses may be reduced to one by the commissioner upon application of a district with a total high school enrollment of less than 500 students.
  - b. Science courses shall include at least 40 percent hands-on laboratory investigations and field work using appropriate scientific inquiry.
4. Social studies — United States History Studies Since 1877, World History Studies, United States Government, World Geography Studies, Personal Financial Literacy, and Economics with Emphasis on the Free Enterprise System and Its Benefits.
5. Physical education — at least two of the following:
  - a. Foundations of Personal Fitness;
  - b. Adventure/Outdoor Education;
  - c. Aerobic Activities; or

- d. Team or Individual Sports.
6. Fine arts — courses selected from at least two of the four fine arts areas (art, music, theatre, and dance) as follows:
  - a. Art I, II, III, IV;
  - b. Music I, II, III, IV;
  - c. Theatre I, II, III, IV; or
  - d. Dance I, II, III, IV.
7. Career and technical education [see EEL] — coherent sequences of courses selected from at least three of the following 16 career clusters:
  - a. Agriculture, Food, and Natural Resources;
  - b. Architecture and Construction;
  - c. Arts, Audio/Video Technology, and Communications;
  - d. Business Management and Administration;
  - e. Education and Training;
  - f. Finance;
  - g. Government and Public Administration;
  - h. Health Science;
  - i. Hospitality and Tourism;
  - j. Human Services;
  - k. Information Technology;
  - l. Law, Public Safety, Corrections, and Security;
  - m. Manufacturing;
  - n. Marketing;
  - o. Science, Technology, Engineering, and Mathematics;  
and
  - p. Transportation, Distribution, and Logistics.
8. Languages other than English — Levels I, II, and III or higher of the same language.
9. Technology applications — Computer Science I and Computer Science II or Advanced Placement (AP) Computer Science and at least two of the following:



- a. Computer Science III;
  - b. Digital Art and Animation;
  - c. Digital Communications in the 21st Century;
  - d. Digital Design and Media Production;
  - e. Digital Forensics;
  - f. Digital Video and Audio Design;
  - g. Discrete Mathematics for Computer Science;
  - h. Fundamentals of Computer Science;
  - i. Game Programming and Design;
  - j. Independent Study in Evolving/Emerging Technologies;
  - k. Independent Study In Technology Applications;
  - l. Mobile Application Development;
  - m. Robotics Programming and Design;
  - n. 3-D Modeling and Animation;
  - o. Web Communications;
  - p. Web Design; and
  - q. Web Game Development.
10. Speech — Communications Applications.
11. Each district shall provide an elective course in personal financial literacy that meets the requirements for a one-half elective credit, using materials approved by the SBOE. The instruction in personal financial literacy must include instruction on completing the application for federal student aid provided by the Department of Education. In fulfilling the requirement to provide financial literacy instruction, a district may use an existing state, federal, private, or nonprofit program that provides students without charge the described instruction.

*19 TAC 74.3(b)(2); Education Code 28.0021(b)*

A district must provide each student the opportunity each year to select courses in which he or she intends to participate from a list that includes all courses listed above. If a district will not offer all required courses every year, but intends to offer particular courses only every other year, it must notify all enrolled students of that fact.

A district shall teach any course a student is specifically required to take for high school graduation at least once in any two consecutive school years. For a subject that has an end-of-course assessment, a district shall either teach the course every year or use alternate delivery systems, as described in 19 Administrative Code Chapter 74, Subchapter C, to enable students to earn credit for the course and shall maintain evidence thereof.

*19 TAC 74.3(b)(4)*

A district may offer additional courses from the complete list of courses approved by the SBOE to satisfy graduation requirements.  
*19 TAC 74.3(b)(3)*

**Applied Courses**

A school district may offer the foundation curriculum in an applied manner. The courses delivered in an applied manner must cover the essential knowledge and skills, and the student shall be administered the applicable end-of-course assessment instrument. *Education Code 28.025(b-4)*

**Research Writing Component**

For students entering grade 9 beginning with the 2007–08 school year, districts must ensure that one or more courses offered in the required curriculum for the Recommended and Advanced/ Distinguished Achievement High School Programs include a research writing component. *19 TAC 74.3(b)(5)*

**Parenting Awareness Program**

High School

A district shall use the parenting and paternity awareness program developed by the SBOE in its high school health curriculum.

Middle and Junior High School

A district may use the program in the district's middle or junior high school curriculum.

Program Requirements

Implementation of this requirement shall comply with the requirement that the board establish a local school health advisory council to assist the district in ensuring that local community values are reflected in the district's health education instruction.

A district may add elements at its discretion but must include the following areas of instruction:

1. Parenting skills and responsibilities, including child support;
2. Relationship skills, including money management, communication, and marriage preparation; and
3. Skills relating to the prevention of family violence, only if the district's middle, junior high, or high schools do not have a family violence program.

At the discretion of the district, a teacher may modify the suggested sequence and pace of the program at any grade level.

**Local Programs and  
Materials**

A district may develop or adopt research-based programs and curriculum materials for use in conjunction with the program developed by the SBOE. The programs and curriculum materials may provide instruction in:

1. Child development;
2. Parenting skills, including child abuse and neglect prevention; and
3. Assertiveness skills to prevent teenage pregnancy, abusive relationships, and family violence.

**Parent Permission**

A student under 14 years of age may not participate in the program without the permission of the student's parent or person standing in parental relation to the student.

*Education Code 28.002(p); 19 TAC 74.35(a)*

**Alcohol Awareness  
Instruction**

A district shall incorporate instruction in the dangers, causes, consequences, signs, symptoms, and treatment of binge drinking and alcohol poisoning into any course meeting a requirement for a health education credit.

A district shall choose an evidence-based alcohol awareness program to use in the district's middle school, junior high school, and high school health curriculum from a list of programs approved by the commissioner for this purpose.

"Evidence-based alcohol awareness program" means a program, practice, or strategy that has been proven to effectively prevent or delay alcohol use among students, as determined by evaluations that use valid and reliable measures and that are published in peer-reviewed journals.

*Education Code 28.002(r); 19 TAC 74.35(b)*

**CPR Instruction**

For all students who entered grade 7 in the 2010–11 school year and thereafter, a district shall provide instruction to students in grades 7–12 in cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). The instruction may be provided as a part of any course. A student shall receive the instruction at least once before graduation from high school.

CPR instruction must include training that has been developed by the American Heart Association or the American Red Cross or us-

ing nationally recognized, evidence-based guidelines for emergency cardiovascular care and incorporating psychomotor skills to support the instruction.

A district may use emergency medical technicians, paramedics, police officers, firefighters, representatives of the American Heart Association or the American Red Cross, teachers, other school employees, or other similarly qualified individuals to provide instruction and training. Instruction is not required to result in CPR certification. If instruction is intended to result in certification, the course instructor must be authorized to provide the instruction by the American Heart Association, the American Red Cross, or a similar nationally recognized association; otherwise, an instructor is not required to be certified in CPR.

Waivers for  
Students with  
Disabilities

A district may waive this requirement for a student who, due to a disability, is unable to complete the instruction. The determination regarding a student's ability to complete the CPR requirement must be made by:

1. The student's admission, review, and dismissal (ARD) committee if the student receives special education services under Education Code, Chapter 29, Subchapter A; or
2. The committee established for the student under Section 504, if the student does not receive special education services, but is covered by Section 504.

*Education Code 28.0023 (c)–(e), (g); 19 TAC 74.38*

Donations

A district may accept from TEA donations the agency receives under Education Code 7.026 for use in providing instruction to students in the principles and techniques of CPR. A district may accept other donations, including donations of equipment, for use in providing CPR instruction. *Education Code 29.903*

**Proper Interaction  
with a Peace Officer**

For any student entering grade 9 in the 2018–19 school year and thereafter, a district shall provide instruction in one or more courses to students in grades 9–12 on proper interaction with peace officers during traffic stops and other in-person encounters. The required instruction may be provided as part of any course or courses and must be provided to each student at least once before graduation from high school.

The instruction must include all the information required by 19 Administrative Code 74.39(b). A district shall use materials developed through a memorandum of understanding among the Texas Commission on Law Enforcement, the State Board of Education, and the Texas Education Agency. A district may tailor the instruction de-

veloped under this section as appropriate for the district's community. In tailoring the instruction, the district shall solicit input from local law enforcement agencies, driver training schools, and the community.

A district shall clearly indicate on the transcript or academic achievement record the year in which the instruction was provided to the student.

*19 TAC 74.39; Education Code 28.012*

**Driver Education**

A school district shall consider offering a driver education and traffic safety course during each school year. If the district offers the course, the district may:

1. Conduct the course and charge a fee for the course in the amount determined by TEA to be comparable to the fee charged by a driver education school that holds a license under Education Code Chapter 1001; or
2. Contract with a driver education school that holds a license under Education Code Chapter 1001 to conduct the course.

*Education Code 29.902*

A driver education course must require the student to complete:

1. Seven hours of behind-the-wheel instruction in the presence of a person who holds a driver education instructor license [see 19 Administrative Code 75.1002];
2. Seven hours of observation instruction in the presence of a person who holds a driver education instructor license; and
3. Thirty hours of behind-the-wheel instruction, including at least ten hours of instruction that takes place at night, in the presence of an adult who meets the requirements of Transportation Code 521.222(d)(2).

*Education Code 1001.101; 19 TAC 75.1002–.1003, 16 TAC Ch. 84, Subch. N*

**Life Skills Programs**

A district may provide an integrated program of educational and support services for students who are pregnant or who are parents. If a district provides such a program, the program shall include all of the following:

1. Individual counseling, peer counseling, and self-help programs.
2. Career counseling and job readiness training.
3. Day care for the students' children on the campus or at a day care facility in close proximity to the campus.
4. Transportation for children of students to and from the campus or day care facility.
5. Transportation for students, as appropriate, to and from the campus or day care facility.
6. Instruction related to knowledge and skills in child development, parenting, and home and family living.

7. Assistance to students in the program in obtaining available services from government agencies or community service organizations, including prenatal and postnatal health and nutrition programs.

A district shall solicit recommendations for obtaining community support for the students and their children in the life skills programs.

A district may operate a shared services arrangement program to operate a life skills program for student parents.

*Education Code 29.085* [See EHBC and FNE]

**School-Based  
Savings Program**

A district may establish a school-based savings program to facilitate increased awareness of the importance of saving for higher education and facilitate personal financial literacy instruction. A district may offer the program in conjunction with a personal financial literacy course under Education Code 28.0021 [see EHAC].

A school-based savings program may, through partnerships with appropriate institutions, promote:

1. General savings, by offering savings accounts or certificates of deposit through partner financial institutions; or
2. Savings dedicated for higher education, by offering through partner institutions the following accounts or bonds the primary purpose of which must be to pay expenses associated with higher education:
  - a. An account authorized under Section 529, Internal Revenue Code of 1986;
  - b. A Coverdell education savings account established under 26 U.S.C. Section 530;
  - c. A certificate of deposit;
  - d. A savings account; and
  - e. A Series I savings bond.

A district establishing a program:

1. Shall seek to establish partnerships with appropriate institutions that are able to offer an account or bond above; and
2. May seek to establish partnerships with public sector partners, private businesses, nonprofit organizations, and philanthropic organizations in the community.

A partnership established between a district and:



1. An appropriate institution may allow a student in the program or the student and an adult in the student's family jointly to have an opportunity to establish an account or purchase a bond; and
2. An appropriate institution, public sector partner, private business, or nonprofit or philanthropic organization may provide:
  - a. A structure for the management of the program; and
  - b. Incentives that encourage contribution to a school-based account or purchase of a bond, including incentives that provide matching funds or seed funding.

*Education Code 28.0024*

**Local Credit Courses**

A district may offer courses for local credit in addition to those in the required curriculum. The State Board of Education shall:

1. Be flexible in approving a course for credit for high school graduation; and
2. Approve courses in cybersecurity for credit for high school graduation.

*Education Code 28.002(f) [See EIF]*

**Apprenticeships**

A district may offer a course or other activity, including an apprenticeship or training hours needed to obtain an industry-recognized credential or certificate, that is approved by the board for credit without obtaining State Board of Education approval if the district meets the requirements in Education Code 28.002(g-1) and (g-2).

A district shall annually report to TEA the names of the locally developed courses, programs, institutions of higher education, and internships in which the district's students have enrolled under this section. TEA shall make information provided under this section available to other districts.

*Education Code 28.002(g-1)–(g-2); 19 TAC 74.11(l)*

**Cybersecurity**

A district may offer a course in cybersecurity that is approved by the board for credit without obtaining State Board of Education approval if the district partners with a public or private institution of higher education that offers an undergraduate degree program in cybersecurity to develop and provide the course. *Education Code 28.002(g-3)*

A district shall annually report to TEA the names of cybersecurity courses approved by the board for credit and institutions of higher

education in which the district's students have enrolled as authorized by the above section. TEA shall make information provided under this section available to other districts. *19 TAC 74.11(m)*

**Parental Notice of Assistance for Learning Difficulties**

Each school year, a district shall notify a parent of each child, other than a child enrolled in a special education program under Education Code Chapter 29, Subchapter A, who receives assistance from the district for learning difficulties, including through the use of intervention strategies that the district provides that assistance to the child. The notice must:

1. Be provided when the child begins to receive the assistance for that school year;
2. Be written in English or, to the extent practicable, the parent's native language; and
3. Include:
  - a. A reasonable description of the assistance that may be provided to the child, including any intervention strategies that may be used;
  - b. Information collected regarding any intervention in the base tier of a multi-tiered system of supports that has previously been used with the child;
  - c. An estimate of the duration for which the assistance, including through the use of intervention strategies, will be provided;
  - d. The estimated time frames within which a report on the child's progress with the assistance, including any intervention strategies used, will be provided to the parent; and
  - e. A copy of the explanation provided under Education Code 26.0081(c). [See FB]

This required notice may be provided to a child's parent at a meeting of the team established for the child under Section 504, Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. Section 794), if applicable.

*Education Code 26.0081(d)–(e)*

“Intervention strategy” means a strategy in a multi-tiered system of supports that is above the level of intervention generally used in that system with all children. The term includes response to intervention and other early intervening strategies. *Education Code 26.004(a)*

**Dyslexia and Related Disorders**

Districts shall provide each student with dyslexia or a related disorder access to each program under which the student qualifies for services. A board shall ensure that procedures are implemented for

identifying and providing appropriate, evidence-based instructional services to students for dyslexia and related disorders.

District procedures must be implemented according to the State Board of Education (SBOE) approved strategies for screening, individualized evaluation, and techniques for treating dyslexia and related disorders. The strategies and techniques are described in the *Dyslexia Handbook: Procedures Concerning Dyslexia and Related Disorders* available on [TEA's Dyslexia webpage](#).<sup>1</sup> Districts shall provide a copy or a link to the electronic version of the *Dyslexia Handbook* to parents of children suspected to have dyslexia or a related disorder.

Districts will be subject to monitoring for compliance with federal law and regulations in connection with 19 Administrative Code 74.28.

*19 TAC 74.28(a)–(c), (l)–(m)*

Screening, Testing,  
and Identification

Students enrolling in public schools in Texas shall be screened or tested, as appropriate, for dyslexia and related disorders at appropriate times in accordance with a program approved by the SBOE. The program must include screening at the end of the school year of each student in kindergarten and each student in the first grade. *Education Code 38.003(a)*

A process for early identification, intervention, and support for students at risk for dyslexia and related disorders must be available, as outlined in the *Dyslexia Handbook*. A district may not use early intervention strategies, including multi-tiered systems of support, to delay or deny the provision of a full and individual evaluation to a child suspected of having a specific learning disability, including dyslexia or a related disorder.

Screening, as described in the *Dyslexia Handbook*, and further evaluation should only be conducted by individuals who are trained in valid, evidence-based assessments and who are trained to appropriately evaluate students for dyslexia and related disorders.

*19 TAC 74.28(d), (j)*

Parent Notification

At least five school days before any identification or evaluation procedure is used selectively with an individual student, a district must provide written notification of the proposed identification or evaluation to the student's parent or guardian or another person standing in parental relation to the student. The notice must be in English, or to the extent practicable, the individual's native language and must include the following:

1. A reasonable description of the evaluation procedure to be used with the individual student;
2. Information related to any instructional intervention or strategy used to assist the student prior to evaluation;
3. An estimated time frame within which the evaluation will be completed; and
4. Specific contact information for the campus point of contact, relevant parent training and information projects, and any other appropriate parent resources.

*IDEA Notice*

Before a full individual and initial evaluation is conducted to determine whether a student has a disability under the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA), a district must notify the student's parent or guardian or another person standing in parental relation to the student of its proposal to conduct an evaluation consistent with 34 C.F.R. 300.503, provide all the information required in the above notice, and provide an opportunity for written consent for the evaluation. The district must also provide a copy of the IDEA procedural safeguards notice required under 34 C.F.R. 300.504 and a copy of Section 504 information required under Education Code 26.0081. [See EHBAE and FB]

*Options and Services*

Parents or guardians of a student with dyslexia or a related disorder must be informed of all services and options available to the student, including general education interventions under response to intervention and multi-tiered systems of support models as required by Education Code 26.0081(d).

*19 TAC 74.28(f)–(h)*

Parent Education

A district shall provide a parent education program for parents and guardians of students with dyslexia and related disorders. This program must include:

1. Awareness and characteristics of dyslexia and related disorders;
2. Information on testing and diagnosis of dyslexia and related disorders;
3. Information on effective strategies for teaching students with dyslexia and related disorders;
4. Information on qualifications of those delivering services to students with dyslexia and related disorders;
5. Awareness of information on accommodations and modifications, especially those allowed for standardized testing;

6. Information on eligibility, evaluation requests, and services available under IDEA and Section 504; and
7. Contact information for the relevant regional and/or district specialists.

*Education Code 38.003; 19 TAC 74.28(k)*

Treatment

Each school shall provide each identified student access at his or her campus to instructional programs required at Reading Program, below, and to the services of a teacher trained in dyslexia and related disorders. A district may, with the approval of each student's parents or guardians, offer additional services at a centralized location, but centralized services shall not preclude each student from receiving services at his or her campus. *19 TAC 74.28(i)*

Reading Program

A district shall purchase a reading program or develop its own reading program that is aligned with the descriptors in the *Dyslexia Handbook*.

Teachers who screen and treat these students must be trained in instructional strategies that use individualized, intensive, multisensory, phonetic methods and a variety of writing and spelling components described in the *Dyslexia Handbook*. The professional development activities specified by the district- and/or campus-level committees shall include these instructional strategies.

*19 TAC 74.28(e)*

Reassessment

Unless otherwise provided by law, a student determined to have dyslexia during screening or testing or accommodated because of dyslexia may not be rescreened or retested for dyslexia for the purpose of reassessing the student's need for accommodations until the district reevaluates the information obtained from previous screening or testing of the student. *Education Code 38.003(b-1)*

---

<sup>1</sup> TEA Dyslexia webpage: <https://tea.texas.gov/academics/dyslexia/>

**Compensatory  
Education Allotment**

A district is entitled to an annual compensatory education allotment for each student:

1. Who is educationally disadvantaged; or
2. Who does not have a disability and resides in a residential placement facility in a district in which the student's parent or legal guardian does not reside.

The number of educationally disadvantaged students is determined by averaging the best six months' numbers of students eligible for enrollment in the national school lunch program of free or reduced-price lunches for the preceding school year; or in the manner provided by commissioner rule.

A student receiving a full-time virtual education through the state virtual school network (TXVSN) [see EHDE] may be included in determining the number of educationally disadvantaged students if the school district submits to the commissioner a plan detailing the enhanced services that will be provided to the student and the commissioner approves the plan.

*Education Code 42.152(a)-(b-1)*

Use

A district shall use its compensatory education allotment to fund supplemental programs and services designed to eliminate any disparity in performance on state assessment instruments or disparity in the rates of high school completion between students at-risk of dropping out of school, as defined below, and all other students.

Specifically, a district may use the funds, other than an indirect cost allotment established by State Board rule, to meet the costs of providing a compensatory, intensive, or accelerated instruction program under Education Code 29.081, a disciplinary alternative education program (DAEP) under Education Code 37.008, or to support a Title I program, at a campus at which at least 40 percent of the students are educationally disadvantaged.

A district may also use allocated funds for:

1. A mentoring services program under Education Code 29.089;
2. An accelerated reading instruction program under Education Code 28.006(g) for students at risk of dropping out of school as defined by Education Code 29.081(d) and (g);
3. A program for treatment of students who have dyslexia or a related disorder, as required by Education Code 38.003, for students at risk of dropping out of school as defined by Education Code 29.081(d) and (g); and



4. A program under Education Code 29.081 specifically designed to serve students at risk of dropping out of school.

*Education Code 42.152(c), (c-1), (c-2)*

Dropout Prevention  
Strategies

A district with a high dropout rate, as determined by the commissioner, shall submit a plan to the commissioner describing the manner in which the district intends to use its compensatory education and high school allotments for developing and implementing research-based strategies for dropout prevention.

If a district is required to submit both a dropout prevention strategy plan and a plan to increase college enrollment [see GNC], the district must describe in its dropout prevention strategy plan how the activities identified in both plans will be coordinated. If a district is required to submit both a school improvement plan, due to failure to meet the required performance standard regarding dropout rates or completion rates, as well as a dropout prevention strategy plan, the district may request that its school improvement plan be used to satisfy both requirements.

A district shall submit the plan not later than December 1 of each school year preceding the school year in which the district will receive the compensatory education or high school allotment to which the plan applies. The plan must meet the requirements at 19 Administrative Code 89.1701(e).

A district may not spend or obligate more than 25 percent of the district's compensatory or high school allotment unless the commissioner approves the plan.

A district's plan shall:

1. Design a dropout recovery plan that includes career and technology education courses or technology applications courses that lead to industry or career certification;
2. Integrate into the dropout recovery plan research-based strategies to assist students in becoming able academically to pursue postsecondary education, including:
  - a. High-quality, college readiness instruction with strong academic and social supports;
  - b. Secondary to postsecondary bridging that builds college readiness skills, provides a plan for college completion, and ensures transition counseling; and
  - c. Information concerning appropriate supports available in the first year of postsecondary enrollment to ensure

postsecondary persistence and success, to the extent funds are available for the purpose; and

3. Plan to offer advanced academic and transition opportunities, including dual credit courses and college preparatory courses, such as advanced placement courses.

A district may enter into a partnership with a public junior college in accordance with Education Code 29.402 in order to fulfill a plan.

Any program designed to fulfill a plan must comply with the requirements of Education Code 29.081(e) and (f).

*Education Code 29.918; 19 TAC 89.1701*

**Definition of At-Risk Student**

“Student at risk of dropping out of school” includes each student who is under 26 years of age and who:

1. Was not advanced from one grade level to the next for one or more school years, unless the student did not advance from prekindergarten or kindergarten to the next grade level only as a result of the request of the student’s parent;
2. If the student is in grades 7–12 did not maintain an average equivalent to 70 on a scale of 100 in two or more subjects in the foundation curriculum during a semester in the preceding or current school year, or is not maintaining such an average in two or more subjects in the foundation curriculum in the current semester;
3. Did not perform satisfactorily on a state assessment instrument and who has not in the previous or current school year subsequently performed on that instrument or another appropriate instrument at a level equal to at least 110 percent of the level of satisfactory performance on that instrument;
4. If the student is in prekindergarten, kindergarten, or grades 1–3, did not perform satisfactorily on a readiness test or assessment instrument administered during the current school year;
5. Is pregnant or is a parent;
6. Has been placed in a DAEP in accordance with Education Code 37.006 during the preceding or current school year;
7. Has been expelled during the preceding or current school year;
8. Is currently on parole, probation, deferred prosecution, or other conditional release;

9. Was previously reported through the Public Education Information Management System (PEIMS) to have dropped out of school;
10. Is a student of limited English proficiency, as defined by Section 29.052;
11. Is in the custody or care of the Department of Family and Protective Services or has, during the current school year, been referred to the department by a school official, officer of the juvenile court, or law enforcement official;
12. Is homeless, as defined by 42 U.S.C. 11302 and its subsequent amendments [see FD]; or
13. Resided in the preceding school year or resides in the current school year in a residential placement facility in a district, including a detention facility, substance abuse treatment facility, emergency shelter, psychiatric hospital, halfway house, cottage home operation, specialized child-care home, or general residential operation.

*Education Code 29.081(d)–(d-1)*

Local Eligibility  
Criteria

In addition to students described above, a student who satisfies local eligibility criteria adopted by a board may receive compensatory education services. The number of students receiving services under local eligibility criteria during a school year may not exceed ten percent of the number of students described above who received services from the district during the preceding school year. *Education Code 29.081(g)*

**Compensatory,  
Intensive, and  
Accelerated  
Instruction**

A district shall use student performance data from state basic skills assessment instruments and achievement tests to design and implement appropriate compensatory, intensive, or accelerated instructional services for students in the district's schools that enable the students to perform at grade level at the conclusion of the next regular school term. *Education Code 29.081(a)*

Accelerated  
Instruction

A district shall provide accelerated instruction to an enrolled student who has taken an end-of-course assessment instrument and has not performed satisfactorily or who is at risk of dropping out of school.

A district shall offer before the next scheduled administration of the assessment instrument, without cost to the student, additional accelerated instruction to each student in any subject in which the student failed to perform satisfactorily on an end-of-course assessment instrument required for graduation.

A district that is required to provide accelerated instruction must separately budget sufficient funds for that purpose. [See CE]

A district shall evaluate the effectiveness of accelerated instruction programs and annually hold a public hearing to consider the results.

*Education Code 29.081(b), (b-1), (b-2), (b-3), 39.025(b-1)*

Each time a student fails to perform satisfactorily on an assessment instrument administered under Education Code 39.023(c), the district in which the student attends school shall provide to the student accelerated instruction in the applicable subject area, using funds appropriated for accelerated instruction under Education Code 28.0211. Accelerated instruction may require participation of the student before or after normal school hours and may include participation at times of the year outside normal school operations.  
*Education Code 28.0217*

*Effectiveness*

A district shall evaluate and document the effectiveness of the accelerated instruction in reducing any disparity in performance on state assessment instruments or disparity in the rates of high school completion between students at risk of dropping out of school and all other district students. *Education Code 29.081(c)*

**Dropout Recovery  
Education Programs**

A district may use a private or public community-based dropout recovery education program to provide alternative education programs for students at risk of dropping out of school. The program may be offered at a campus or through the use of an online program that leads to a high school diploma and prepares the student to enter the workforce. A campus-based dropout recovery education program must meet the criteria set forth at Education Code 29.081(e-1)(1)–(5). An online dropout recovery education program must meet the criteria set forth at Education Code 29.081(e-2)(1)–(8).

Students in attendance at a dropout recovery education program shall be included in a district's average daily attendance for funding purposes.

*Education Code 29.081(e)–(f)*

Communities in  
Schools

An elementary or secondary school receiving funding under Education Code 33.156 shall participate in the Communities in Schools (CIS) program if the number of students enrolled in the school who are at risk of dropping out of school is equal to at least ten percent of the number of students in average daily attendance at the school, as determined by TEA. *Education Code 33.157*

**Optional Extended  
Year Program**

If a district provides an optional extended year program, it shall adopt a policy designed to lead to immediate reduction and ultimate elimination of student retention. *Education Code 29.082; 19 TAC 105.1001*

**Optional Flexible  
Year Program**

A district may provide an optional flexible year program (OFYP) for students who did not or are not likely to perform successfully on state assessment instruments or who would not otherwise be promoted to the next grade level.

Program Criteria

An OFYP must meet the requirements set forth at Education Code 29.0821 and 19 Administrative Code 129.1029.

*Education Code 29.0821; 19 TAC 129.1029*

**Optional Flexible  
School Day Program**

Notwithstanding Education Code 25.081 or 25.082, a district may apply to the commissioner to provide a flexible school day program (OFSDP) for students, in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 129.1027. *Education Code 29.0822*

A board must approve the application. The board must include the OFSDP as an item on the regular agenda for a board meeting providing options for public input concerning the proposed application before applying to operate an OFSDP. The application shall include the information described in 19 Administrative Code 129.102. *19 TAC 129.1027(c)*

Program Criteria

A district that meets application requirements may:

1. Provide flexibility in the number of hours each day a student attends;
2. Provide flexibility in the number of days each week a student attends;
3. Allow a student to enroll in less than or more than a full course load; or
4. Allow a student to enroll in a dropout recovery program in which courses are conducted online.

Except in the case of a course designed for a student who will be denied credit as a result of attendance requirements or enrolled in an online dropout recovery program, a course offered in a program under this section must provide for at least the same number of instructional hours as required for a course offered in a program that meets the required minimum number of minutes of operation under Education Code 25.081.

*Education Code 29.0822(b)–(c)*

- Student Eligibility      A district may provide an OFSDP for students who:
1. Have dropped out of school or are at risk of dropping out of school, as defined above at Definition of At-Risk Student;
  2. Attend a campus that is implementing an innovative redesign;
  3. Attend a community-based dropout recovery education program, as defined by Education Code 29.081(e-1) and (e-2);
  4. Attend an early college high school under a plan approved by the commissioner; or
  5. As a result of attendance requirements under Education Code 25.092, will be denied credit for one or more classes in which the students have been enrolled.

A student under 18 years of age is eligible to participate if the student and the student's parent, or person standing in parental relation to the student, agree in writing to the student's participation. A student that is 18 years of age or older or has otherwise attained legal status as an adult by reason of marriage or court order may agree in writing to participate.

*19 TAC 129.1027(b); Education Code 29.0822(a)*

A student who will be denied credit for one or more classes as a result of attendance requirements may enroll in a course in a OFSDP offered during the school year or during the period in which school is recessed for the summer to enable the student to earn class credit that the student would not otherwise be able to receive without retaking the class. *Education Code 29.0822(e)*

Extracurricular Participation      A student enrolled in an OFSDP may participate in a competition or activity sanctioned by the University Interscholastic League (UIL) only if the student meets all UIL eligibility criteria. *19 TAC 129.1027(f)*

Annual Performance Review      Annually, each school district shall review its progress in relation to the performance indicators as required by 19 Administrative Code 129.1027(h). Progress should be assessed based on information that is disaggregated with respect to race, ethnicity, gender, and socioeconomic status. *19 TAC 129.1027(h)*

**Tutorial Services**      A district may provide tutorial services at district schools. If a district provides tutorial services, it shall require a student whose grade in a subject for a reporting period is lower than the equivalent of 70 on a scale of 100 to attend tutorials. [See EC for provisions on loss of class time.]

A district may provide transportation services to accommodate students who are required to attend tutorials and who are eligible for regular transportation.

*Education Code 29.084*

**Basic Skills Programs**

A district may apply to the commissioner for funding of basic skills programs for students in grade 9 who are at risk of not earning sufficient credit or who have not earned sufficient credit to advance to grade 10 and who fail to meet minimum skills levels established by the commissioner.

With the consent of a student's parent or guardian, a district may assign a student to the basic skills program.

A basic skills program may not exceed 210 instructional days and must meet the requirements set forth at Education Code 29.086.

*Education Code 29.086*

**After-School and Summer Intensive Mathematics and Science Programs**

A district may provide an intensive after-school program or an intensive program during the period that school is recessed for the summer to provide mathematics and science instruction to:

1. Students who are not performing at grade level in mathematics or science to assist those students in performing at grade level;
2. Students who are not performing successfully in a mathematics course or science course to assist those students in successfully completing the course; or
3. Other students as determined by the district.

Before providing a program, a board must adopt a policy for:

1. Determining student eligibility for participating in the program that:
  - a. Prescribes the grade level or course a student must be enrolled in to be eligible; and
  - b. Provides for considering teacher recommendations in determining eligibility;
2. Ensuring that parents of or persons standing in parental relation to eligible students are provided notice of the program;
3. Ensuring that eligible students are encouraged to attend the program;



4. Ensuring that the program is offered at one or more locations in the district that are easily accessible to eligible students; and
5. Measuring student progress on completion of the program.

*Education Code 29.088, .090; 19 TAC 102.1041*

**Mentoring Services Program**

A district may provide a mentoring services program to students at risk of dropping out of school. A board may arrange for any public or nonprofit community-based organization to come to the district's schools and implement the program.

A board shall obtain the consent of a student's parent or guardian before allowing the student to participate in the program.

*Education Code 29.089*

**Accelerated Reading Instruction Program**

A district shall implement an accelerated reading instruction program that provides reading instruction that addresses reading deficiencies to each student in kindergarten, first grade, or second grade who is determined, on the basis of reading instrument results [see EKC], to be at risk for dyslexia or other reading difficulties. The district shall determine the form, content, and timing of the program.

A district shall provide additional reading instruction and intervention to each student given the seventh grade reading assessment [see EKC], as appropriate to improve the student's reading skills in the relevant areas identified through the assessment instrument.

Limitation

A district may implement an accelerated reading instruction program only if the commissioner certifies that funds have been appropriated during a school year for administering the program.

*Education Code 28.006(f), (g), (g-1), (k)*

**Intensive Program of Instruction**

State Assessments

A district shall offer an intensive program of instruction to a student who does not perform satisfactorily on a state assessment instrument or is not likely to receive a high school diploma before the fifth school year following the student's enrollment in grade 9, as determined by the district.

The program shall be designed to:

1. Enable the student to:
  - a. To the extent practicable, perform at the student's grade level at the conclusion of the next regular school term; or
  - b. Attain a standard of annual growth specified by a district and reported by the district to TEA; and

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>2. If applicable, carry out the purposes of Education Code 28.0211. [See EIE]</li></ol>
Students Receiving Special Education Services	<p>For a student in a special education program who does not perform satisfactorily on an assessment instrument administered under Education Code 39.023(a), (b), or (c), the student's admission, review, and dismissal committee shall design the program to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Enable the student to attain a standard of annual growth on the basis of the student's individualized education program (IEP); and</li><li>2. If applicable, carry out the purposes of Education Code 28.0211. [See EIE]</li></ol>
Graduation Requirements	<p>A district shall use funds appropriated by the legislature for an intensive program of instruction to plan and implement intensive instruction and other activities aimed at helping a student satisfy state and local high school graduation requirements.</p>
No Cause of Action	<p>A district's determination of the appropriateness of an intensive program of instruction for a student is final and does not create a cause of action.</p> <p><i>Education Code 28.0213</i></p>
<b>Maximum Allowable Indirect Cost</b>	<p>A district may expend no more than the following percentages of the district's Foundation School Program (FSP) special allotments under Education Code Chapter 42, Subchapter C, for indirect costs related to the following programs:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. No more than 48 percent for indirect costs related to:<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Compensatory education,</li><li>b. Bilingual education and special language programs, and</li><li>c. Special education.</li></ol></li><li>2. No more than 45 percent for indirect costs related to gifted and talented education programs.</li><li>3. No more than 42 percent for indirect costs related to career and technical education programs.</li></ol> <p>Beginning with the 2012–13 school year, a district may choose to use a greater indirect cost allotment under Education Code 42.151, .153, .154, and .156, to the extent the district receives less funding per weighted student in state and local maintenance and operations revenue than in the 2011–12 school year. The commissioner</p>

shall develop a methodology for a school district to make this determination and may require any information necessary to implement this rule.

*19 TAC 105.11*

**College Preparatory  
Courses**

Each district shall partner with at least one institution of higher education to develop and provide courses in college preparatory mathematics and English language arts. The courses must be designed:

1. For students at the twelfth grade level whose performance on:
  - a. An end-of-course assessment instrument required under Education Code 39.023(c) does not meet college readiness standards; or
  - b. Coursework, a college entrance examination, or an assessment instrument designated under Education Code 51.334 [Texas Success Initiative (TSI) assessment] indicates that the student is not ready to perform entry-level college coursework; and
2. To prepare students for success in entry-level college courses.

A course must be provided on the campus of the high school offering the course or through distance learning or as an online course provided through an institution of higher education with which the district partners.

Faculty

Appropriate faculty of each high school offering courses and appropriate faculty of each institution of higher education with which the district partners shall meet regularly as necessary to ensure that each course is aligned with college readiness expectations.

Notice

Each district shall provide a notice to each eligible student and the student's parent or guardian regarding the benefits of enrolling in a course.

Credit Earned

A student who successfully completes an English language arts course may use the credit earned toward satisfying the advanced English language arts curriculum requirement for the foundation high school program under Education Code 28.025(b-1)(1). A student who successfully completes a mathematics course may use the credit earned in the course toward satisfying an advanced mathematics curriculum requirement under Education Code 28.025 after completion of the mathematics curriculum requirements for the foundation high school program under Education Code 28.025(b-1)(2).

Dual Credit	A course may be offered for dual credit at the discretion of the institution of higher education with which a district partners.
Instructional Materials	<p>Each district, in consultation with each institution of higher education with which the district partners, shall develop or purchase instructional materials for a course consistent with Education Code Chapter 31. The instructional materials must include technology resources that enhance the effectiveness of the course and draw on established best practices.</p> <p><i>Education Code 28.014</i></p>
End-of-Course Exam	<p>A student enrolled in a college preparatory mathematics or English language arts course under Education Code 28.014 who satisfies the TSI college readiness benchmarks on an assessment instrument administered at the end of the course satisfies the requirements concerning and is exempt from the administration of the Algebra I or the English I and English II end-of-course assessment instruments, as applicable, as prescribed by Education Code 39.023(c), even if the student did not perform satisfactorily on a previous administration of the applicable end-of-course assessment instrument. A student who fails to perform satisfactorily on the assessment instrument may retake that assessment instrument or may take the appropriate end-of-course assessment instrument.</p> <p><i>Education Code 39.025(a-1)</i></p>

---

**Note:** The terms English language learner and English learner are used interchangeably and are synonymous with the limited English proficiency (LEP) student as used in Education Code Chapter 29. *19 TAC 89.1203*

---

**Title III Requirements** A district that receives funds under Title III of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act shall comply with the statutory requirements regarding English learners and immigrant students. *20 U.S.C. 6801–7014*

A district that receives funds under Title I or Title III to provide a language instruction educational program shall, not later than 30 days after the beginning of the school year, inform the parents of an English learner identified for participation in such a program of the information required by 20 U.S.C. 6312(e)(3). *20 U.S.C. 6312(e)(3)*

**State Policy** It is the policy of the state that every student who has a primary language other than English and who is identified as an English learner shall be provided a full opportunity to participate in a bilingual education or English as a second language (ESL) program. *19 TAC 89.1201(a)*

**Definitions** “Certified English as a second language teacher” is synonymous with the term “professional transitional language educator” used in Education Code 29.063.

“Dual language immersion” means a state-approved bilingual program model in accordance with Education Code 29.066.

“English learner” is a student who is in the process of acquiring English and has another language as the primary language.

“Parent” includes a legal guardian of a student.

*Education Code 29.052; 19 TAC 89.1203*

**District  
Responsibility**

Each district shall:

1. Identify English learners based on criteria established by the state;
2. Provide bilingual education and ESL programs as integral parts of the general program;
3. Seek appropriately certified teaching personnel to ensure that English learners are afforded full opportunity to master the essential knowledge and skills; and

4. Assess achievement for essential knowledge and skills in accordance with Education Code Chapter 29 to ensure accountability for English learners and the schools that serve them.

*19 TAC 89.1201(a)*

**Identification of LEP Students**

Within the first four weeks of the first day of school, the language proficiency assessment committee (LPAC) shall determine and report to the board the number of LEP students on each campus and shall classify each student according to the language in which the student possesses primary proficiency. A board shall report that information to TEA before November 1 each year. *Education Code 29.053(b)*

Language Proficiency Assessment Committees (LPAC)

Each district that is required to offer bilingual and special language programs shall, by local board policy, establish an LPAC. A district shall establish and operate a sufficient number of LPACs to enable them to discharge their duties within four weeks of the enrollment of English learners. A district shall have on file policy and procedures for the selection, appointment, and training of members of the LPAC.

*Membership of LPAC*

The LPAC shall include:

1. An appropriately certified bilingual educator (for students served through a bilingual education program);
2. An appropriately certified English as a second language (ESL) educator (for students served through an ESL program);
3. A parent of an English learner participating in a bilingual or ESL program; and
4. A campus administrator.

A district may add other trained members to the committee.

No parent serving on the LPAC shall be an employee of the school district.

All members of the LPAC, including parents, shall be acting for the district and shall observe all laws and rules governing confidentiality of information concerning individual students. A district shall be responsible for the orientation and training of all members, including the parents, of the LPAC.

*Education Code 29.063(a), (b); 19 TAC 89.1220(a)–(f)*

*Duties*

The LPAC shall have the duties set forth at Education Code 29.063(c) and 19 Administrative Code 89.1220(g)–(i), (k), including

duties to review information, classify students, notify parents, and monitor student academic progress.

Home Language  
Survey

A district shall administer only one home language survey to each new student enrolling for the first time in a Texas public school in any grade from prekindergarten through grade 12. The district shall require that the survey be signed by the student's parents if the student is in prekindergarten through grade 8, or by the student if the student is in grades 9 through 12. The original copy of the survey shall be kept in the student's permanent record.

The home language survey shall be administered in English, Spanish, and Vietnamese. For students of other language groups, the home language survey shall be translated into the primary language whenever possible.

The home language survey shall contain the following questions:

1. "What language is spoken in the child's home most of the time?"
2. "What language does the child speak most of the time?"

If the response on the home language survey indicates that a language other than English is used, the student shall be tested in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 89.1225 in the 2018–19 school year and 19 Administrative Code 89.1226 in the 2019–20 school year and thereafter.

*19 TAC 89.1215, .1225*

LEP Classification

The LPAC may classify a student as LEP if:

1. The student's ability in English is so limited or the student's disabilities are so severe that assessment procedures cannot be administered;
2. The student's score or relative degree of achievement on the TEA-approved English proficiency test is below the levels established by TEA as indicative of reasonable proficiency;
3. The student's primary language proficiency score as measured by a TEA-approved test is greater than the student's proficiency in English; or
4. The LPAC determines, based on other information, including a teacher evaluation, parental viewpoint, or student interview, that the student's primary language proficiency is greater than the student's proficiency in English or that the student is not reasonably proficient in English.

*Education Code 29.056(c)*



Parental Notice and  
Consent

Within ten days of the LPAC's classification of a student as LEP, the LPAC shall give written notice to the student's parent. *Education Code 29.056(d)*

The district shall notify the parent or legal guardian in English and in the parent or legal guardian's primary language that their child has been classified as an English learner and recommended for placement in the required bilingual education or ESL program. The district shall comply with the parent notification requirements described by 19 Administrative Code 89.1040(a).

The entry or placement of a student in the bilingual education or ESL program must be approved in writing by the student's parent or legal guardian.

*19 TAC 89.1040(a); Education Code 29.056(a)*

Pending parent approval of an English learner's entry into a bilingual program recommended by the LPAC, a district shall place the student in the recommended program. Only English learners with parent approval who are receiving services will be included in the bilingual education allotment.

A district may identify, exit, or place a student in a program without written approval of the student's parent or guardian if:

1. The student is 18 years of age or has had the disabilities of minority removed;
2. The parent or legal guardian provides approval through a phone conversation or email that is documented in writing and retained; or
3. An adult who the district recognizes as standing in parental relation to the student provides written approval. This may include a foster parent or employee of a state or local governmental agency with temporary possession or control of the student.

*19 TAC 89.1220(j), (m), .1240(a)*

Participation of  
Non-LEP Students

With the approval of a district and a student's parents, a student who is not LEP may also participate in a bilingual education program. *Education Code 29.058*

The number of participating students who are not English learners shall not exceed 40 percent of the number of students enrolled in the program district-wide. *19 TAC 89.1233(c)*

Students with  
Disabilities

Districts shall implement assessment procedures that differentiate between language proficiency and disabling conditions in accordance with 19 Administrative Code Chapter 89, Subchapter AA. The district shall establish placement procedures that ensure that placement in a bilingual education or ESL program is not refused solely because the student has a disability. LPAC members shall meet in conjunction with admission, review, and dismissal (ARD) committee members to review and provide recommendations about the education needs of each English learner who qualifies for services in the special education program. [See EHBAB] 19 TAC 89.1230

**Bilingual and ESL  
Programs**

Each district with an enrollment of 20 or more LEP students in any language classification in the same grade level district-wide shall offer a bilingual education or special language program, as follows:

1. Prekindergarten through elementary grades: a district shall provide a bilingual education program by offering dual language instruction using one of the four bilingual program models described in 19 Administrative Code 89.1210(c). Elementary grades shall include at least prekindergarten through grade 5; sixth grade shall be included when clustered with the elementary grades. [See Bilingual Education Program Models, below]
2. Post-elementary through grade 8: a district shall offer bilingual education, ESL, or other transitional language instruction approved by TEA.
3. Grades 9 through 12: a district shall provide ESL instruction by offering an ESL program using one of the two models described at 19 Administrative Code 89.1210(g). [See ESL Program Models, below]

*Education Code 29.053(c), (d); 19 TAC 89.1205*

The district shall provide an ESL program to all English learners for whom a district is not required to offer a bilingual education program, regardless of the students' grade levels and primary language, and regardless of the number of such students, except in cases where a district exercises the option to provide a bilingual education program that is not required by law [see below]. 19 TAC 89.1205(c)

A district is authorized to establish a bilingual education program even if the district has fewer than 20 English learners in any language classification in the same grade level district-wide and are not required to do so under the law. A district is also authorized to establish bilingual education programs at grade levels at which the

	<p>district is not required under the law to establish bilingual programs. If a district does operate such a program under this authorization, the district shall adhere to all program requirements in 19 Administrative Code 89.1210, .1227, .1228, and .1229. <i>19 TAC 89.1205(f)–(g)</i></p>
Exceptions and Waivers	<p>A district shall comply with the requirements for bilingual education exceptions and ESL waivers under 19 Administrative Code 89.1207. If a program other than bilingual education must be used in kindergarten through the elementary grades, documentation for the exception must be filed with and approved by TEA. <i>Education Code 29.054; 19 TAC 89.1027</i></p> <p>A district that is unable to employ a sufficient number of teachers, including part-time teachers, who meet the certification requirements for bilingual education and ESL program shall apply for an exception or waiver to the certification requirement on or before November 1. <i>19 TAC 89.1245(b)</i></p>
Program Design	<p>A district that is required to offer a bilingual education or ESL program shall provide each English learner the opportunity to be enrolled in the required program at his or her grade level.</p> <p>A district's bilingual education program shall comply with the program content and design requirements of 19 Administrative Code 89.1210. A district shall provide for ongoing coordination between the ESL program and the regular educational program.</p> <p><i>19 TAC 89.1210</i></p> <p>A bilingual education program shall be a full-time program of dual language instruction. An ESL program shall be an intensive program of instruction in English. <i>19 TAC 89.1210(a)(1)–(a)(2)</i></p> <p>English learners shall participate with their English-speaking peers in general education classes provided in subjects such as art, music, and physical education. A district shall ensure students enrolled in the bilingual or ESL program have a meaningful opportunity to participate with other students in all extracurricular activities. Elective courses may be taught in a language other than English. <i>Education Code 29.055, .057(b); 19 TAC 89.1210(f)</i></p>
<i>Bilingual Education Program Models</i>	<p>The bilingual education program shall be implemented through at least one of the following program models:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Transitional bilingual/early exit;</li><li>2. Transitional bilingual/late exit;</li><li>3. Dual language immersion/one-way; or</li></ol>

4. Dual language immersion/two-way.

*19 TAC 89.1210(c)*

*ESL Program  
Models*

The ESL program shall be implemented through one of the following program models:

1. An ESL/content-based program model is an English acquisition program that serves students identified as English learners through English instruction by a teacher appropriately certified in ESL under Education Code 29.061(c), through English language arts and reading, mathematics, science, and social studies. The goal of content-based ESL is for English learners to attain full proficiency in English in order to participate equitably in school. This model targets English language development through academic content instruction that is linguistically and culturally responsive in English language arts and reading, mathematics, science, and social studies.
2. An ESL/pull-out program model is an English acquisition program that serves students identified as English learners through English instruction provided by an appropriately certified ESL teacher under Education Code 29.061(c), through English language arts and reading. The goal of ESL pull-out is for English learners to attain full proficiency in English in order to participate equitably in school. This model targets English language development through academic content instruction that is linguistically and culturally responsive in English language arts and reading. Instruction shall be provided by the ESL teacher in a pull-out or inclusionary delivery model.

*19 TAC 89.1210(d)*

Dual Language  
Immersion Program

A district may adopt a dual language immersion program (DLIP) for students enrolled in elementary school grades. *Education Code 28.005(c), .0051(c)*

*Implementation*

Program implementation shall:

1. Begin at prekindergarten or kindergarten, as applicable;
2. Continue without interruption incrementally through the elementary grades; and
3. Consider expansion to middle school and high school whenever possible.

*19 TAC 89.1227(e)*

*Minimum  
Requirements*

A DLIP shall:

1. Address all curriculum requirements specified at 19 Administrative Code Chapter 74, Subchapter A (Required Curriculum) to include foundation and enrichment areas, English language proficiency standards, and college and career readiness standards.
2. Be a full-time program of academic instruction in English and another language.
3. Provide equitable resources in English and the additional program language whenever possible.
4. Provide a minimum of 50 percent of instructional time in the language other than English for the duration of the program.
5. Be developmentally appropriate and based on current best practices identified in research.

*19 TAC 89.1227*

*Two-Way DLIP  
Enrollment*

Student enrollment in a two-way DLIP is optional for English proficient students. The program shall fully disclose candidate selection criteria and ensure that access to the program is not based on race, creed, color, religious affiliation, age, or disability. A district must obtain written parental approval for English proficient students through a district-developed process.

A district implementing a two-way DLIP shall develop a policy on enrollment and continuation for students in the program. The policy must address:

1. Eligibility criteria;
2. Program purpose;
3. The district's commitment to providing equitable access to services for English learners.
4. Grade levels in which the program will be implemented;
5. Support of program goals as stated in 19 Administrative Code 89.1210 (Program Content and Design); and
6. Expectations for students and parents.

*19 TAC 89.1228*

*School District  
Recognition*

A district may recognize one or more of its schools that implement an exceptional DLIP if the school meets all of the following criteria:

1. The school must meet the minimum requirements stated in 19 Administrative Code 89.1227.

2. The school must receive an acceptable performance rating in the state accountability system.

The school must not be identified for any stage of intervention for the district's bilingual and/or ESL program under the performance-based monitoring system.

*Student  
Recognition*

A student participating in a DLIP or any other state-approved bilingual or ESL program may be recognized by the program and the board by earning a performance acknowledgement in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.14. [See EIF]

*19 TAC 89.1229*

Facilities

Bilingual education and ESL programs shall be located in public schools of the district with equitable access to all educational resources rather than in separate facilities. A district may concentrate the programs at a limited number of facilities within the district. Recent immigrant English learners shall not remain enrolled in a newcomer center for longer than two years. *Education Code 29.057; 19 TAC 89.1235*

Cooperation Among  
Districts

A district may join with one or more other districts to provide the required bilingual education or special language programs. The availability of the programs shall be publicized throughout the districts involved.

A district may allow a nonresident LEP student to enroll in or attend its bilingual education or special language programs if the student's district of residence does not provide an appropriate program. The tuition for the student shall be paid by the district in which the student resides.

*Education Code 29.059; 19 TAC 89.1205(e)*

Documentation

A student's permanent record shall contain the documentation items required by 19 Administrative Code 89.1220(I). Documentation in a student's permanent record shall be forwarded in the same manner as other student records to another school district in which the student enrolls. *19 TAC 89.1220(I)*

For students previously enrolled in a Texas public school, the receiving district shall secure the student records, including the home language survey. All attempts to contact the sending district to request records shall be documented. Multiple attempts to obtain the student's home language survey shall be made. If attempts to obtain the student's home language survey from the sending district are unsuccessful, the identification process shall begin while at-

tempts to contact the sending district for records continue throughout the four-week testing and identification period. *19 TAC 89.1215(d)*

Summer Program

If a district is required to offer a bilingual education or special language program, it shall offer a voluntary summer school program for LEP children who will be eligible for admission to kindergarten or first grade at the beginning of the next school year.

A school that operates on a semester system shall offer the program during the period school is recessed for the summer and for one-half day for eight weeks or on a similar schedule approved by the board. A school that operates on any other system shall offer 120 hours of instruction on a schedule established by the board.

The program must be an intensive bilingual education or special language program that meets the standards set by TEA, and the student/teacher ratio may not exceed 18:1. A district shall comply with the requirements of 19 Administrative Code 89.1250 in providing such a program.

Other Program

A district may establish on a full- or part-time basis other summer school, extended day, or extended week bilingual or special language programs for LEP students and may join with other districts in establishing such programs.

Neither the summer program nor the other programs may substitute for the program to be provided during the regular school year.

*Education Code 29.060*

**Personnel**

Teachers assigned to a bilingual education program using one of the following program models must be appropriately certified in bilingual education:

1. Transitional bilingual/early exit program model; or
2. Transitional bilingual/late exit program model.

*Education Code 29.061(b)*

Teachers assigned to a bilingual education program using a dual language immersion/one-way or two-way program model must be appropriately certified for:

1. Bilingual education for the component of the program provided in a language other than English; and
2. Bilingual education or English as a second language for the component of the program provided in English.



A district that provides a bilingual education program using a dual language immersion/one-way or two-way program model may assign a teacher certified for the language other than English component of the program and a different teacher certified for the English language component.

*Education Code 29.061(b-1)–(b-2)*

Teachers assigned to ESL programs must be appropriately certified for ESL. *Education Code 29.061(c)*

A district that is unable to hire a sufficient number of teachers with bilingual teaching or ESL certificates shall request the activation of the appropriate permits in accordance with 19 Administrative Code Chapter 230. A district that is unable to employ a sufficient number of teachers to meet the certification requirements shall apply to the commissioner for an exception or waiver to the required program. [See Exceptions and Waivers, above] *Education Code 29.054; 19 TAC 89.1207(a)–(b), .1245(a)*

**LEP Students and  
State Assessments**

In kindergarten–grade 12, a LEP student shall participate in the state assessment in accordance with commissioner’s rules at 19 Administrative Code Chapter 101, Subchapter AA. [See EKBA]

**Program Exit**

A district may transfer a LEP student out of a bilingual education or special language program for the first time or a subsequent time if the student is able to participate equally in a regular all-English instructional program as determined by:

1. TEA-approved tests administered at the end of each school year to determine the extent to which the student has developed oral and written language proficiency and specific language skills in English;
2. Satisfactory performance on the reading assessment instrument under Education Code 39.023(a) or an English language arts assessment instrument under Education Code 39.023(c), as applicable, with the assessment instrument administered in English, or, if the student is enrolled in the first or second grade, an achievement score at or above the 40th percentile in the reading and language arts sections of an English standardized test approved by TEA; and
3. TEA-approved criterion-referenced tests and the results of a subjective teacher evaluation.

*Education Code 29.056(g)*

Notice to Parents

A district shall give written notification to the student’s parent or legal guardian of a student’s reclassification as English proficient and

his or her exit from the bilingual or ESL program and acquire written approval. Students meeting exit requirements may continue in the bilingual education or ESL program with parental approval but are not eligible for inclusion in the bilingual education allotment.

*19 TAC 89.1240(b)*

**Post-Exit Monitoring  
and Reenrollment**

The language proficiency assessment committee may reenroll the student in the program if later evidence suggests that a student who has been transferred out of a bilingual education or special language program has inadequate English proficiency and achievement. Classification of students for reenrollment must be based on the criteria required by Education Code 29.056. *Education Code 29.056(h)*

The LPAC shall reevaluate a student who is transferred out of a bilingual education or special language program if the student earns a failing grade in a subject in the foundation curriculum during any grading period in the first two school years after the student is transferred to determine whether the student should be reenrolled in a bilingual education or special language program.

During the first two school years after a student is transferred out of a bilingual education or special language program, the LPAC shall review the student's performance and consider:

1. The total amount of time the student was enrolled in bilingual education or special language programs;
2. The student's grades each grading period in each subject in the foundation curriculum;
3. The student's performance on state assessment instruments;
4. The number of credits the student has earned toward high school graduation, if applicable; and
5. Any disciplinary actions taken against the student under Education Code Chapter 37, Subchapter A.

After the evaluation, the LPAC may require intensive instruction for the student or reenroll the student in a bilingual education or special language program.

*Education Code 29.0561*

**Program Evaluation**

A district that is required to conduct a bilingual education or ESL program shall conduct an evaluation in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 89.1265. The annual evaluation report shall be presented to the board before November 1 of each year.

A district shall report to parents the progress of their child in acquiring English as a result of participation in the program offered to English learners.

Each school year, the principal of each campus, with assistance from the campus level committee, shall develop, review, and revise the campus improvement plan for the purposes of improving student performance for English learners. [See BQB]

*19 TAC 89.1265*

**Adult Education**

A district must provide an adult education program designed to meet the education and training needs of adults to the extent possible using available public and private resources. Bilingual education must be used to instruct students who do not function satisfactorily in English whenever it is appropriate for those students' optimum development. *Labor Code 315.003*

**Essential Program Components**

An Adult Education and Literacy (AEL) grant recipient shall provide the following essential program components:

1. Adult basic education;
2. Programs for adults of limited English proficiency;
3. Adult secondary education, including programs leading to a high school equivalency certificate or a high school diploma;
4. Instructional services to improve student proficiencies necessary to function effectively in adult life, including accessing further education, employment-related training, or employment;
5. Assessment and guidance services related to items 1–4, above; and
6. Collaboration with multiple partners in the community to expand the services available to adult learners and to prevent duplication of services.

*40 TAC 805.4*

**Diploma Requirements**

The standards for awarding diplomas to adults shall be those established in 19 Administrative Code Chapter 74, Subchapter A (relating to Curriculum Requirements), except:

1. There shall be no limit to the number of secondary credits adults may earn by demonstrating competence.
2. Adults may earn the required physical education credits by one or more of the following:
  - a. Satisfactory completion of approved secondary physical education courses; or
  - b. Substitution of state-approved secondary elective courses.
3. Adults must meet the requirements for successful performance on a secondary level test designated by the commissioner of education.

*40 TAC 805.5*

<b>Staff Qualifications</b>	<p>AEL aides, administrative, data entry, proctoring staff, and staff providing support or employment services to students shall have at least a high school diploma or a high school equivalency certificate. AEL directors, supervisors, staff that oversees program assessment services and/or overall program accountability, and instructors in the content areas of reading, writing, mathematics, and English language acquisition, including substitutes, shall have at least a bachelor's degree.</p> <p>Requests for exemptions for staff qualification requirements in individual cases may be submitted to the Texas Workforce Commission for approval. The exemption shall include a justification outlining extenuating circumstances and shall be submitted and approved prior to an individual being placed in the position in question.</p>
<b>Professional Development</b>	<p>The district shall comply with the program requirements for professional development in accordance with 40 Administrative Code 805.21.</p> <p>Records of staff qualifications and professional development shall be maintained by each grant recipient and shall be available for monitoring.</p> <p><i>40 TAC 805.21</i></p>
<b>Tuition and Fees</b>	<p>Tuition and fees shall not be charged unless a district is statutorily authorized to do so. Funds generated by tuition and fees shall be used for the AEL instructional program. <i>40 TAC 805.45</i></p>
<b>Reimbursement for Community Education</b>	<p>If a board elects to provide community education for all age groups, it may be eligible for reimbursement for the costs of the program. In order to receive reimbursement, it must submit an application in accordance with TEA rules and reimbursement shall be made to the extent authorized.</p>
Conditions	<p>A district will receive such reimbursement only if it has achieved the level of community services prescribed by TEA in the current or preceding year.</p> <p><i>Education Code 29.256</i></p>

Using guidelines established by the State Board of Education (SBOE), a district shall develop or purchase examinations for acceleration to thoroughly test comprehension of the information presented in the applicable grade level or subject. The board shall approve for each subject, to the extent available, at least four examinations that satisfy the SBOE guidelines. *Education Code 28.023*

**Board Approval**

A district must have the approval of the board to develop its own tests or to purchase examinations. *19 TAC 74.24(a)(4)*

**Kindergarten–Grade  
5**

A district shall develop procedures for kindergarten acceleration that are approved by the board.

A district shall accelerate a student in grades 1–5 one grade if the student meets the following requirements:

1. The student scores 80 percent or above on a criterion-referenced test for the grade level to be skipped in each of the following areas: language arts, mathematics, science, and social studies;
2. A district representative recommends that the student be accelerated; and
3. The student's parent or guardian gives written approval of the acceleration.

*19 TAC 74.24(b)*

**Assessment Audit**

The board shall approve an audit process to be completed for assessments for acceleration. *19 TAC 74.24(b)(1)*

**Grades 6–12**

A district shall give a student in grades 6–12 credit for an academic subject in which the student has received no prior instruction if the student scores:

1. A three or higher on a College Board advanced placement examination that has been approved by the board for the applicable course;
2. A scaled score of 50 or higher on an examination administered through the College-Level Examination Program (CLEP) and approved by the board for the applicable course; or
3. Eighty percent or above on any other criterion-referenced test approved by the board for the applicable course.

*19 TAC 74.24(c)(8)*

**Board-Approved  
Examinations**

The board shall approve for each high school course, to the extent available, at least four examinations that shall include College

Board advanced placement examinations and examinations administered through CLEP.

The examinations may include examinations developed by Texas Tech University, The University of Texas at Austin, the school district, or another entity.

*Audit for District-  
Developed  
Examinations*

The board shall approve an audit process to be completed for examinations developed by the district.

*19 TAC 74.24(c)(1)*

**Exam Certification  
for Grades 6–12**

In order for a district to administer an examination for credit, prior to the first administration, the district or provider of the assessment must certify that the examination:

1. Is aligned to all assessable TEKS for the course;
2. Has not been published and is not publicly available;
3. Will only be administered in a secure environment under standardized conditions by a school district or institution of higher education; and
4. Has been evaluated to ensure:
  - a. Test scores can be interpreted as indicators of what the test is intended to measure; and
  - b. Consistency of test results across testing conditions.

*19 TAC 74.24(c)(2)*

Examinations for courses that do not have an end-of-course (EOC) assessment shall meet all validation requirements at items 1–4 above no later than the 2019–20 school year. *19 TAC 74.24(c)(7)*

**Courses with  
Corresponding  
EOCs**

In order for a district to administer an examination for credit for a course that has a state EOC assessment instrument, the district or provider of the assessment must certify, prior to the first administration, that the examination:

1. Meets the above requirements for exam validation;
2. Has been externally validated and determined to:
  - a. Align to and appropriately address all assessable TEKS for the course;
  - b. Assess the appropriate level of rigor for each student expectation; and
  - c. Yield comparable distribution of results across tested subgroups.



If the number of students who take an examination in a given year is not sufficient to determine comparable results among subgroups, the provider may obtain approval from the SBOE to demonstrate comparable results over a specified number of years.

For an examination that is validated in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.24(4), a district or the provider of the assessment must make public the following:

1. The annual report described below;
2. All relevant test development specifications;
3. A statement certifying that the examination meets the external validation criteria described above; and
4. Results for all tested subgroups disaggregated by students who receive prior instruction and students with no prior instruction and including descriptive data for small subgroups.

*19 TAC 74.24(c)(4)–(6)*

**Annual Report**

A district or provider of the assessment must make public an annual report, including:

1. The test development process;
2. A statement certifying the examination meets the certification criteria in 19 Administrative Code 74.24(c)(2)(d);
3. The number of students who took each examination;
4. The number of students who scored 70 percent or above on each examination;
5. The number of students who scored 80 percent or above on each examination; and
6. The average score for all students who took the examination for each examination.

*19 TAC 74.24(c)(3)*

**EOC Assessments**

An EOC assessment administered under Education Code 39.023(c) cannot be used for purposes of credit by examination. *19 TAC 101.3021(c)*

If a student is given credit by exam for a course with a corresponding EOC assessment on the basis of an examination on which the student scored 80 percent or higher, the district must enter the examination score on the student's transcript, and the student is not required to take an applicable EOC assessment instrument for the course. *19 TAC 74.24(c)(11)*

**Annual Administration**

A district shall administer each exam approved by the board not fewer than four times each year. A district must provide windows to test between January 1 and March 31, April 1 and June 30, July 1 and September 30, and October 1 and December 31, unless the exam's administration date is established by an entity other than the district. A student may take a specific examination only once during each window.

The testing window must be designed to meet the needs of all students. The dates must be publicized in the community.

*Education Code 28.023; 19 TAC 74.24(a)(1)*

A district may allow a student to accelerate at a time other than those described above by developing a cost-free option approved by the board that allows students to demonstrate academic achievement or proficiency in a subject or grade level. *19 TAC 74.24(a)(5)*

Students Who Are Homeless or in Substitute Care

A district shall provide opportunities for a student who is homeless or in substitute care who transfers to the district after the start of the school year to be administered credit by examination at any point during the school year. *19 TAC 74.24(a)(2)*

**Limitations on Taking Examinations**

A student may not attempt to earn credit by examination for a specific high school course more than two times.

If a student fails to earn credit by examination for a specific high school course before the beginning of the school year in which the student would ordinarily be required to enroll in that course in accordance with the district's prescribed course sequence, the student must satisfactorily complete the course to receive credit for the course.

*Education Code 28.023; 19 TAC 74.24(c)(9)–(10)*

**Fees**

A district shall not charge for examinations for acceleration. If a parent requests an alternative examination, the district may administer and recognize results of a test purchased by the parent or student from Texas Tech University or the University of Texas at Austin. *19 TAC 74.24(a)(3)*

<b>Award of Credit</b>	The award of credit for a course affirms that a student has satisfactorily met state and local requirements. <i>19 TAC 74.26(a)</i>
Early Award of Credit	A district may offer courses designated for grades 9–12 in earlier grade levels. Credit must be awarded if the student has demonstrated achievement by meeting the standard requirements of the course, including demonstrated proficiency in the subject matter, regardless of the time the student received instruction in the course or the grade level at which proficiency was attained. The academic achievement record (transcript) shall reflect that students have satisfactorily completed courses at earlier grade levels from grades 9–12 and have been awarded state graduation credits. <i>19 TAC 74.26(b)</i>
Partial Award	<p>In accordance with a district’s local policy, a student who is able to successfully complete only one semester of a two-semester course can be awarded credit proportionately. <i>19 TAC 74.26(d)</i></p> <p>A district shall award credit proportionately to a student who is homeless or in substitute care who successfully completes only one semester of a two-semester course. <i>19 TAC 74.26(e)</i></p>
Attendance for Credit or Final Grade	Unless credit is awarded by the attendance committee, or regained in accordance with a principal’s plan [see FEC], a student in any grade level from kindergarten through grade 12 may not be given credit or a final grade for a class unless the student is in attendance for at least 90 percent of the days the class is offered. <i>Education Code 25.092</i>
<b>Graduation Requirements</b>	Credit for courses for high school graduation may be earned only if the student received a grade equivalent to 70 on a scale of 100, based upon the essential knowledge and skills of each course. Credit earned toward state graduation requirements in an accredited school district shall be transferable and must be accepted by any other school district in the state. <i>19 TAC 74.26(a)(1), (c)</i>
<b>Academic Achievement Record</b>	<p>Following guidelines developed by the commissioner of education, a district shall use an academic achievement record (transcript) form that includes student demographics, school data, student data, and the record of courses and credits earned.</p> <p>The academic achievement record (transcript) shall serve as the academic record for each student and shall be maintained permanently by a district.</p> <p>Any credit earned by a student must be recorded on the academic achievement record (transcript), regardless of when the credit was earned.</p>

ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT

EI  
(LEGAL)

A student's performance on a state assessment, including an end-of-course assessment instrument required under Education Code 39.023(c) [see EKB], must be included in the student's academic achievement record (transcript).

Copies of the record shall be made available to students transferring to another district. A district shall respond promptly to all requests for student records from receiving districts. [See also FD, FDA, and FL]

*Education Code 28.025(e), 39.023(c-5); 19 TAC 74.5(b)-(d)*

Transcript Seals	Students who complete high school graduation requirements shall have attached to the academic achievement record (transcript) a seal approved by the State Board of Education. <i>19 TAC 74.5(e)</i>
Endorsement	Students who complete the requirements for an endorsement shall have the endorsement clearly indicated on the academic achievement record (transcript).
Performance Acknowledgment	Students who earn a performance acknowledgment shall have the performance acknowledgment clearly indicated on the academic achievement record (transcript).
Distinguished Level of Achievement	Students who earn the distinguished level of achievement shall have the distinguished level of achievement clearly indicated on the academic achievement record (transcript).
Speech Requirements	Students who demonstrate proficiency in speech as specified in 19 Administrative Code 74.11 shall have completion of the speech requirement clearly indicated on the academic achievement record (transcript).
CPR	Students who complete the required instruction in cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) as specified in 19 Administrative Code 74.38 in grade 9, 10, 11, or 12 shall have completion of the CPR instruction clearly indicated on the academic achievement record (transcript).
Proper Interaction with Peace Officers	Students who complete the required instruction on proper interaction with peace officers shall have completion of the instruction clearly indicated on the academic achievement record (transcript). A district shall clearly indicate on the academic achievement record the year in which the instruction was provided to the student.
Languages Other Than English	Students who satisfy a language other than English graduation credit requirement by successfully completing a dual language immersion program at an elementary school in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.12 shall have the credit clearly indicated on the academic achievement record (transcript).

*Education Code 28.025(e-1); 19 TAC 74.5(f)-(l), .11(b); 19 TAC 74.39(e)*

ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT

EI  
(LEGAL)

Notation on  
Transcript or  
Diploma

A district shall ensure that each student's official transcript or diploma indicates whether the student has completed or is on schedule to complete:

1. The recommended or advanced high school curriculum; or
2. For a district that is covered by Education Code 56.304(f)(1) (unavailability of courses), the required portion of the recommended or advanced high school curriculum offered at the district's high school.

The district must include this information on the student's transcript not later than the end of the student's junior year.

*Education Code 56.308*

Certificate of  
Coursework  
Completion

A student who completes all graduation requirements except for required end-of-course assessment instruments may be issued a certificate of coursework completion. The academic achievement record (transcript) shall include a notation of the date a certificate of completion was issued to the student. [See FMH for participation in the graduation ceremony.] *19 TAC 74.5(m)*

**Early High School  
Graduation  
Scholarship Program**

For purposes of the Early High School Graduation Scholarship Program, a student who does not satisfy the curriculum requirements for a recommended or advanced high school program is considered to have satisfied those requirements if the high school from which the student graduated indicates on the student's transcript that the student was unable to complete the appropriate curriculum within the time prescribed solely because of a reason beyond the student's control, such as lack of enrollment capacity or a shortage of qualified teachers. *Education Code 56.203(d)*

**High School Diploma** A student may graduate and receive a diploma only if the student successfully completes:

1. The curriculum requirements identified by the State Board of Education (SBOE) [see State Graduation Requirements, below] and has performed satisfactorily on applicable state assessments [see EKB]; or
2. An individualized education program (IEP) developed under Education Code 29.005. [See EHBAB]

*Education Code 28.025(c)*

---

**Note:** Education Code 28.0258 and 19 Administrative Code 74.1025 related to individual graduation committees expire September 1, 2019.

---

Individual  
Graduation  
Committee

Without complying with the requirements above, a student may receive a diploma if the person is eligible for a diploma as determined by an individual graduation committee (IGC) established under Education Code 28.0258. *Education Code 28.025(c-6)*

For each 11th or 12th grade student who has failed to comply with the end-of-course (EOC) assessment instrument performance requirements under Education Code 39.025 for not more than two courses, the district shall establish an IGC at the end of or after the student's 11th grade year to determine whether the student may qualify to graduate. A student may not qualify to graduate before the student's 12th grade year.

The IGC shall be composed of:

1. The principal or principal's designee;
2. For each EOC assessment instrument on which the student failed to perform satisfactorily, the teacher of the course;
3. The department chair or lead teacher supervising the teacher(s) above; and
4. As applicable:
  - a. The student's parent or person standing in parental relation to the student;
  - b. A designated advocate if the parent is unable to serve; or
  - c. The student, at the student's option, if the student is at least 18 years of age or is an emancipated minor.

The superintendent shall establish procedures for convening the committee.

The district shall provide an appropriate translator, if available, for a parent, advocate, or student who is unable to speak English.

*Education Code 28.0258(a)-(c), (c-2); 19 TAC 74.1025*

*Notice*

A district shall ensure a good faith effort is made to timely notify the appropriate person described under item 4 above of the time and place for convening the IGC and the purpose of the committee. The notice must be provided in person or by regular mail or email; clear and easy to understand; and written in English, in Spanish, or, to the extent practicable, in the native language of the appropriate person. *Education Code 28.0258(d)*

*Curriculum Requirements*

To be eligible to graduate and receive a high school diploma from the IGC, a student must successfully complete the curriculum requirements required for high school graduation. [See State Graduation Requirements, below] *Education Code 28.0258(e)*

*Additional Requirements to Graduate*

A student's IGC shall recommend additional requirements by which the student may qualify to graduate, including additional remediation; and for each EOC assessment instrument on which the student failed to perform satisfactorily:

1. The completion of a project related to the subject area of the course that demonstrates proficiency in the subject area; or
2. The preparation of a portfolio of work samples in the subject area of the course, including work samples from the course that demonstrate proficiency in the subject area.

A student may submit to the IGC coursework previously completed to satisfy a recommended additional requirement.

*Education Code 28.0258(f), (g)*

In determining whether a student is qualified to graduate, the committee shall consider the criteria at Education Code 28.0258(h) and any other academic information designated for consideration by the board. After considering the criteria, the committee may determine that the student is qualified to graduate. A student may graduate and receive a high school diploma on the basis of the committee's decision only if the student successfully completes all additional requirements recommended by the committee, the student meets applicable curriculum requirements, and the committee's vote is unanimous. The decision of a committee is final and may not be appealed. *Education Code 28.0258(i)*



<i>English Language Learners</i>	For provisions related to an IGC and English language learners (ELL), see EKB(LEGAL).
Students Who Entered Grade 9 Before the 2011–12 School Year	<p>In accordance with Education Code 28.02541, a school district may award a high school diploma to an individual who:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Entered grade 9 before the 2011–12 school year;</li><li>2. Successfully completed the curriculum requirements for high school graduation applicable when the individual entered grade 9;</li><li>3. Has not performed satisfactorily on the exit-level assessment instrument or part of an assessment instrument required for high school graduation, including an alternative assessment instrument offered under Education Code 39.025(c-1);</li><li>4. Has been administered at least three times the required subject-area test(s) for which the individual has not performed satisfactorily on the exit-level assessment instrument applicable to the individual when the individual entered grade 9; and</li><li>5. Meets the alternative requirements for graduation in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.1027(c) or the local alternative requirements approved by the board in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.1027(d).</li></ol> <p><i>19 TAC 74.1027(a); Education Code 28.02541</i></p>
<i>District Determination</i>	The school district in which the individual is enrolled or was last enrolled shall determine whether the individual may qualify to graduate and receive a high school diploma on the basis of the alternative requirements for graduation. <i>19 TAC 74.1027(b)</i>
<i>Alternative Requirements</i>	The alternative requirements for graduation are listed at 19 Administrative Code 74.1027(c).
<i>Local Alternative Requirements</i>	With approval by the board, a district may develop recommendations for local alternative requirements if the requirements would allow an individual to demonstrate proficiency in the content related to an examination for which the individual has not performed satisfactorily. <i>19 TAC 74.1027(d)</i>
<i>Appeals</i>	A decision regarding whether the individual qualifies to graduate and receive a high school diploma is final and may not be appealed. <i>19 TAC 74.1027(e); Education Code 28.02541</i>
<i>Documentation</i>	The district shall maintain documentation to support the decision to award or not award an individual a high school diploma. <i>19 TAC 74.1027(f)</i>

ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT  
GRADUATION

EIF  
(LEGAL)

**Special Education** A student receiving special education services who successfully completes the requirements of his or her IEP, including performance on a state assessment required for graduation, shall receive a high school diploma. A student's admission, review, and dismissal (ARD) committee shall determine if the student will be required to meet satisfactory performance on an assessment for purposes of graduation. *19 TAC 101.3023(a)* [See Graduation of Students Receiving Special Education Services, below, and EKB]

**Posthumous Diploma** Beginning with students enrolled in grade 12 during the 2005–06 school year, and on request of the student's parent, a district shall issue a high school diploma posthumously to a student who died while enrolled in the district at grade level 12, provided that the student was academically on track at the time of death to receive a diploma at the end of the school year in which the student died. "School year" includes any summer session following the spring semester.

*Exception* A district is not required to issue a posthumous diploma if the student was convicted of a felony offense under Title 5 or 6, Penal Code, or adjudicated as having engaged in conduct constituting a felony offense under Title 5 or 6, Penal Code.

*Education Code 28.0254*

**Diplomas for Veterans** Notwithstanding any other provision of this policy, a district may issue a high school diploma to a person who is an honorably discharged member of the armed forces of the United States; was scheduled to graduate from high school after 1940 and before 1975 or after 1989; and left school after completing the sixth or a higher grade, before graduating from high school, to serve in:

1. World War II, the Korean War, the Vietnam War, the Persian Gulf War, the Iraq War, or the war in Afghanistan; or
2. Any other war formally declared by the United States, military engagement authorized by the United States Congress, military engagement authorized by a United Nations Security Council resolution and funded by the United States Congress, or conflict authorized by the president of the United States under the War Powers Resolution of 1973, 50 U.S.C. 1541, et seq.

*Education Code 28.0251*

**Personal Graduation Plan** A principal of a junior high or middle school shall designate a school counselor, teacher, or other appropriate individual to develop and administer a personal graduation plan (PGP) for each student enrolled in the junior high or middle school who:

Junior High or  
Middle School PGP

1. Does not perform satisfactorily on a state assessment instrument; or
2. Is not likely to receive a high school diploma before the fifth school year following the student's enrollment in grade level 9, as determined by a district.

A PGP must:

1. Identify educational goals for the student;
2. Include diagnostic information, appropriate monitoring and intervention, and other evaluation strategies;
3. Include an intensive instruction program described in Education Code 28.0213 [see EHBC];
4. Address participation of the student's parent or guardian, including consideration of the parent's or guardian's educational expectations for the student; and
5. Provide innovative methods to promote the student's advancement, including flexible scheduling, alternative learning environments, online instruction, and other interventions that are proven to accelerate the learning process and have been scientifically validated to improve learning and cognitive ability.

*Education Code 28.0212*

*Students  
Receiving  
Special  
Education  
Services*

For a student receiving special education services, the student's ARD committee and the district are responsible for developing the student's PGP.

A student's IEP developed under Education Code 29.005 may be used as the student's PGP.

*Education Code 28.0212(c); 19 TAC 89.1050(a) [See EHBAB]*

High School PGP

A principal of a high school shall designate a school counselor or school administrator to review PGP options with each student entering grade 9 together with that student's parent or guardian. The PGP options reviewed must include the distinguished level of achievement and endorsements.

Before the conclusion of the school year, the student and the student's parent or guardian must confirm and sign a PGP for the student that identifies a course of study that:

1. Promotes college and workforce readiness and career placement and advancement; and

2. Facilitates the student's transition from secondary to postsecondary education.

A district may not prevent a student and the student's parent or guardian from confirming a PGP that includes pursuit of a distinguished level of achievement or an endorsement.

A student may amend the student's PGP after the initial confirmation of the plan. If a student amends the student's PGP, the school must send written notice to the student's parents regarding the change.

TEA must make available to a district information that explains the advantages of the distinguished level of achievement described by Education Code 28.025(b-15) and each endorsement described by Education Code 28.025(c-1). A district, in turn, shall publish the information from TEA on the internet website of the district and ensure that the information is available to students in grades nine and above and the parents or legal guardians of those students in the language in which the parents or legal guardians are most proficient.

A district is required to provide this information in the language in which the parents or legal guardians are most proficient only if at least 20 students in a grade level primarily speak that language.

*Education Code 28.02121*

### Early Graduation

A parent is entitled to request, with the expectation that the request will not be unreasonably denied, that the parent's child be permitted to graduate from high school earlier than the child would normally graduate, if the child completes each course required for graduation. The decision of a board concerning the request is final and may not be appealed. *Education Code 26.003(a)(3)(C), (b)* [See FMH, FNG]

### State Graduation Requirements

---

**Note:** For current state graduation requirements, including those for students who entered grade 9 before the 2007–08 school year but that are not otherwise referenced in this policy, see Education Code 28.025 and 19 Administrative Code Chapter 74.

---

Students Entering  
Grade 9 in the  
2014–15 School  
Year

To receive a high school diploma, a student entering grade 9 in the 2014–15 school year and thereafter must complete:

1. Requirements of the foundation high school program under 19 Administrative Code 74.12 [see Foundation High School Program, below];

2. Testing requirements for graduation under 19 Administrative Code Chapter 101 [see EKB]; and
3. Demonstrated proficiency, as determined by the district, in delivering clear verbal messages; choosing effective nonverbal behaviors; listening for desired results; applying valid critical-thinking and problem-solving processes; and identifying, analyzing, developing, and evaluating communication skills needed for professional and social success in interpersonal situations, group interactions, and personal and professional presentations.

A student shall enroll in the courses necessary to complete the curriculum requirements for the foundation high school program and the curriculum requirements for at least one endorsement.

*Education Code 28.025(c); 19 TAC 74.11(a), (c)*

*Foundation High School Program*

A student must earn at least 22 credits to complete the foundation high school program and must demonstrate proficiency in the following core courses:

1. English language arts—4 credits;
2. Mathematics—3 credits;
3. Science—3 credits;
4. Social Studies—3 credits;
5. Languages other than English—2 credits;
6. Physical Education—1 credit;
7. Fine Arts—1 credit; and
8. Elective courses—5 credits.

*19 TAC 74.12*

*Endorsements*

A student shall specify in writing an endorsement the student intends to earn upon entering grade 9. A student may earn any of the following endorsements:

1. Science, technology, engineering, and mathematics (STEM);
2. Business and industry;
3. Public services;
4. Arts and humanities; and
5. Multidisciplinary studies.

A district must make at least one endorsement available to students. A district that offers only one endorsement curriculum must offer multidisciplinary studies.

To earn an endorsement a student must demonstrate proficiency in the curriculum requirements for the foundation high school program and, in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.13(e), earn:

1. A fourth credit in mathematics;
2. An additional credit in science; and
3. Two additional elective credits.

A course completed as part of the four courses needed to satisfy an endorsement requirement may also satisfy a requirement under the foundation high school program, including an elective requirement. The same course may count as part of the set of four courses for more than one endorsement.

A district shall permit a student to enroll in courses under more than one endorsement before the student's junior year and to choose, at any time, to earn an endorsement other than the endorsement the student previously indicated.

A student must earn at least 26 credits to earn an endorsement, but a student is not entitled to remain enrolled to earn more than 26 credits.

A district may define advanced courses and determine a coherent sequence of courses for an endorsement area, provided that prerequisites in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110–118, 126, 127, and 130 are followed.

*Education Code 28.025; 19 TAC 74.13*

Exception

A student may graduate under the foundation high school program without earning an endorsement if, after the student's sophomore year:

1. The student and the student's parent or person standing in parental relation to the student are advised by a school counselor of the specific benefits of graduating from high school with one or more endorsements; and
2. The student's parent or person standing in parental relation to the student files with a school counselor written permission, on a form adopted by TEA, allowing the student to graduate under the foundation high school program without earning an endorsement.

*19 TAC 74.11(d)*

*Distinguished Level of Achievement* A student may earn a distinguished level of achievement by successfully completing the curriculum requirements for the foundation high school program and the curriculum requirements for at least one endorsement, including four credits in science and four credits in mathematics, including Algebra II. 19 TAC 74.11(e)

*Prerequisites* A student may not be enrolled in a course that has a required prerequisite unless:

1. The student has completed the prerequisite course(s);
2. The student has demonstrated equivalent knowledge as determined by the district; or
3. The student was already enrolled in the course in an out-of-state, an out-of-country, or a Texas nonpublic school and transferred to a Texas public school prior to successfully completing the course.

A district may award credit for a course a student completed without having met the prerequisites if the student completed the course in an out-of-state, an out-of-country, or a Texas nonpublic school where there was not a prerequisite.

19 TAC 74.11(i)–(j)

*College Courses* Courses offered for dual credit at or in conjunction with an institution of higher education that provide advanced academic instruction beyond, or in greater depth than, the essential knowledge and skills for the equivalent high school course required for graduation may satisfy graduation requirements, including requirements for required courses, advanced courses, and courses for elective credit as well as requirements for endorsements. 19 TAC 74.11(h)

*Languages Other Than English* Students may earn credit for languages other than English in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.12(b)(5).

A student who successfully completes a dual language immersion program may satisfy one credit of the two credits required in a language other than English in accordance with 19 Administrative Code 74.12(b)(5)(F).

19 TAC 74.12(b)(5)

*Physical Education Substitutions* In accordance with local district policy, the required physical education credit may be earned through completion of any TEKS-based course that is not being used to satisfy another specific graduation requirement. [See Restrictions, below]

Other Physical Activity



In accordance with local district policy, credit for any physical education course may be earned through participation in the following activities:

1. Athletics;
2. JROTC; and
3. Appropriate private or commercially sponsored physical activity programs conducted on or off campus. A district must apply to the commissioner of education for approval of such programs, which may be substituted for state graduation credit in physical education. Such approval may be granted under the following conditions:
  - a. Olympic-level participation and/or competition includes a minimum of 15 hours per week of highly intensive, professional, supervised training. The training facility, instructors, and the activities involved in the program must be certified by the superintendent to be of exceptional quality. Students qualifying and participating at this level may be dismissed from school one hour per day. Students dismissed may not miss any class other than physical education.
  - b. Private or commercially sponsored physical activities include those certified by the superintendent to be of high quality and well supervised by appropriately trained instructors. Student participation of at least five hours per week must be required. Students certified to participate at this level may not be dismissed from any part of the regular school day.

In accordance with local district policy, up to one credit for any one of the physical education courses listed in 19 Administrative Code Chapter 74 [see EHAC] may be earned through participation in any of the following activities:

1. Drill team;
2. Marching band; and
3. Cheerleading.

Restrictions

All substitution activities permitted by local district policy must include at least 100 minutes of moderate to vigorous physical activity per five-day school week.

No more than four substitution credits may be earned through any combination of substitutions listed above.

Student with  
Disability or  
Illness

A student who is unable to participate in physical activity due to disability or illness may substitute an academic elective credit in English language arts, mathematics, science, social studies or a course that is offered for credit as provided by Education Code 28.002(g-1) for the required physical education credit. A credit allowed to be substituted may not also be used by the student to satisfy a graduation requirement other than completion of the physical education credit. The determination regarding a student's ability to participate in physical activity must be made by:

1. The student's ARD committee if the student receives special education services under Education Code Chapter 29, Subchapter A;
2. The committee established for the student under Section 504, Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. Section 794) if the student does not receive special education services under Education Code Chapter 29, Subchapter A but is covered by the Rehabilitation Act of 1973; or
3. A committee, established by the district, of persons with appropriate knowledge regarding the student if each of the committees described above is inapplicable. This committee must follow the same procedures required of an ARD or a Section 504 committee.

*Education Code 28.025(b-10)–(b-11); 19 TAC 74.12(b)(6)*

*Community-  
Based Fine Arts  
Programs*

In accordance with local district policy, the required fine arts credit may be earned through participation in a community-based fine arts program not provided by the school district in which the student is enrolled.

In accordance with local policy, credit may be earned through participation in the community-based fine arts program only if the program meets each of the following requirements:

1. The district must apply to the commissioner for approval of the community-based fine arts program;
2. The board must certify that the program provides instruction in the essential knowledge and skills for fine arts as defined by 19 Administrative Code, Chapter 117, Subchapter C;
3. The district must document student completion of the approved activity;
4. The program must be organized and monitored by appropriately trained instructors;

5. The fine arts program may be provided on or off a school campus and outside the regular school day; and
6. Students may not be dismissed from any part of the regular school day to participate in the community-based fine arts program.

The district shall require that instructors of the community-based fine arts program provide the district, at its request, the information necessary to obtain the criminal history record information required for school personnel in accordance with 19 Administrative Code, Chapter 153, Subchapter DD, if the community-based program is offered on campus.

*Education Code 28.025(b-9); 19 TAC 74.12(b)(7)(B), .1030*

*Performance  
Acknowledgments*

In accordance with the requirements of 19 Administrative Code 74.14, a student may earn a performance acknowledgment on the student's transcript for:

1. Outstanding performance:
  - a. In a dual credit course;
  - b. In bilingualism and biliteracy;
  - c. On a College Board advanced placement test or international baccalaureate examination;
  - d. On an established, valid, reliable, and nationally norm-referenced preliminary college preparation assessment instrument used to measure a student's progress toward readiness for college and the workplace;
  - e. On an established, valid, reliable, and nationally norm-referenced assessment instrument used by colleges and universities as part of their undergraduate admissions process; or
2. Earning a state-recognized or nationally or internationally recognized business or industry certification or license.

*Education Code 28.025(c-5); 19 TAC 74.14*

Transition to  
Foundation High  
School Program

A district shall allow a student who entered grade 9 prior to the 2014–15 school year to complete the curriculum requirements for high school graduation:

1. By satisfying the requirements in place when the student entered grade 9 for the Minimum, Recommended, or Advanced/Distinguished Achievement High School Program [see

19 Administrative Code Chapter 74] if the student was participating in the program before the 2014–15 school year; or

2. Under the foundation high school program by satisfying the requirements adopted by the SBOE, if the student chooses during the 2014–15 school year to take courses under the program.

A student who entered grade 9 prior to the 2014–15 school year may, at any time prior to graduation and upon request, choose to complete the curriculum requirements required for high school graduation under a different program than that selected by the student during the 2014–15 school year.

*19 TAC 74.1021*

Students Who  
Entered Grade 9  
Before the 2014–15  
School Year

*Minimum High  
School Program*

All credit for graduation must be earned no later than grade 12. *19 TAC 74.61(b), .71(b)*

A student entering grade 9 prior to the 2014–15 school year who does not choose to complete the curriculum requirements for high school graduation under the foundation high school program must enroll in the courses necessary to complete the curriculum requirements for the Recommended High School Program or the Advanced/Distinguished Achievement High School Program, unless the student, the student’s parent or other person standing in parental relation to the student, and a school counselor or school administrator agree in writing signed by each party that the student should be permitted to take courses under the Minimum High School Program, and the student:

1. Is at least 16 years of age;
2. Has completed two credits required for graduation in each subject of the foundation curriculum under Education Code 28.002(a)(1); or
3. Has failed to be promoted to the tenth grade one or more times as determined by the school district.

Students with  
Disabilities

If an ARD committee makes decisions that place a student with a disability on a modified curriculum in a subject area, the student will be automatically placed in the Minimum High School Program.

Applicability

A student who was permitted to take courses under the Minimum High School Program prior to the 2009–10 school year may remain in the Minimum High School Program.

*19 TAC 74.61(c), (d), .71(c), (d)*

Requirements	<p>A student must earn at least 22 credits to complete the Minimum High School Program.</p> <p>A student who entered grade 9 in the 2012–13 or 2013–14 school year must demonstrate proficiency in the program requirements listed at 19 Administrative Code 74.72.</p> <p>A student who enters grade 9 before the 2012–13 school year must meet the applicable program requirements in 19 Administrative Code Chapter 74, Subchapters D–F.</p> <p><i>Education Code 28.025; 19 TAC 74.62, .72</i></p>
<i>Recommended High School Program</i>	<p>A student who entered grade 9 in the 2012–13 or 2013–14 school year must earn at least 26 credits to complete the Recommended High School Program. A student must demonstrate proficiency in the program requirements listed at 19 Administrative Code 74.73.</p> <p><i>Education Code 28.025; 19 TAC 74.63, .73</i></p>
<i>Advanced / Distinguished Achievement High School Program</i>	<p>A student who entered grade 9 in the 2012–13 or 2013–14 school year must earn at least 26 credits to complete the Advanced/Distinguished Achievement High School Program. A student must demonstrate proficiency in the program requirements listed at 19 Administrative Code 74.74.</p> <p><i>Education Code 28.025; 19 TAC 74.64, .74</i></p>
<i>Substitutions</i>	<p>No substitutions are allowed for high school graduation requirements in the Recommended and Advanced/Distinguished Achievement High School Programs, except as provided by State Board rule. <i>19 TAC 74.63(d), .64(e), .73(d), .74(e)</i></p>
<i>AP or IB Courses</i>	<p>College Board advanced placement and international baccalaureate courses may be substituted for required courses in appropriate areas. These courses may be used as electives in all three high school graduation programs. <i>19 TAC 74.61(k), .71(i)</i></p>
<i>Reading</i>	<p>A district may offer a maximum of 3 credits of reading for state graduation elective credit for identified students if the district:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Adopts policies to identify students in need of additional reading instruction;</li><li>2. Has procedures that include assessment of individual student needs and ongoing evaluation of each student’s progress; and</li><li>3. Monitors instructional activities to ensure that student needs are addressed.</li></ol> <p>Reading credits may be selected from Reading I, II, or III.</p> <p><i>19 TAC 74.61(h), .71(f)</i></p>

*College Courses* A student may comply with the curriculum requirements under the Minimum, Recommended, or Advanced/Distinguished Achievement High School Program for each subject of the foundation curriculum and for languages other than English by successfully completing appropriate courses in the core curriculum of an institution of higher education. 19 TAC 74.61(l), .71(j)

*Physical Education Substitutions* In accordance with local district policy, credit for any physical education course may be earned through participation in the following activities:

Other Physical Activity

1. Athletics;
2. JROTC; and
3. Appropriate private or commercially sponsored physical activity programs conducted on or off campus. A district must apply to the commissioner for approval of such programs, which may be substituted for state graduation credit in physical education. Such approval may be granted under the following conditions:
  - a. Olympic-level participation and/or competition includes a minimum of 15 hours per week of highly intensive, professional, supervised training. The training facility, instructors, and the activities involved in the program must be certified by the superintendent to be of exceptional quality. Students qualifying and participating at this level may be dismissed from school one hour per day. Students dismissed may not miss any class other than physical education.
  - b. Private or commercially sponsored physical activities include those certified by the superintendent to be of high quality and well supervised by appropriately trained instructors. Student participation of at least five hours per week must be required. Students certified to participate at this level may not be dismissed from any part of the regular school day.

In accordance with local district policy, up to one credit for any one of the physical education courses listed in 19 Administrative Code Chapter 74 [see EHAC] may be earned through participation in any of the following activities:

1. Drill team;
2. Marching band; and
3. Cheerleading.

Restrictions	<p>All substitution activities must include at least 100 minutes per five-day school week of moderate to vigorous physical activity.</p> <p>No more than four substitution credits may be earned through any combination of substitutions listed above.</p>
<i>Student with Disability or Illness</i>	<p>A student who is unable to participate in physical activity due to disability or illness may substitute an academic elective credit in English language arts, mathematics, science, or social studies for the required physical education credit. A credit allowed to be substituted may not also be used by the student to satisfy a graduation requirement other than completion of the physical education credit. The determination regarding a student's ability to participate in physical activity must be made by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The student's ARD committee if the student receives special education services under Education Code Chapter 29, Subchapter A;</li><li>2. The committee established for the student under Section 504, Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. Section 794) if the student does not receive special education services under Education Code Chapter 29, Subchapter A but is covered by the Rehabilitation Act of 1973; or</li><li>3. A committee, established by the district, of persons with appropriate knowledge regarding the student if each of the committees described above is inapplicable. This committee must follow the same procedures required of an ARD or a Section 504 committee.</li></ol>
<i>Student with Physical Limitations</i>	<p>If a student entering grade 9 during the 2007–08 school year or thereafter is unable to comply with all of the requirements for a physical education course due to a physical limitation certified by a licensed medical practitioner, a modification to a physical education course does not prohibit the student from earning a Recommended or Advanced/Distinguished High School Program diploma. A student with a physical limitation must still demonstrate proficiency in the relevant knowledge and skills in a physical education course that do not require physical activity.</p> <p><i>Education Code 28.025(b-10)–(b-11); 19 TAC 74.62(b)(7), .63(b)(7), .64(b)(7), .72(b)(6), .73(b)(6), .74(b)(6)</i></p>
<b>Transfers from Out-of-State or Nonpublic Schools</b>	<p>Out-of-state or out-of-country transfer students (including foreign exchange students) and transfer students from Texas nonpublic schools are eligible to receive Texas diplomas but shall complete all applicable high school graduation requirements. Any course credits required for graduation that are not completed before enroll-</p>



**Graduation of  
Students Receiving  
Special Education  
Services**

Modified Curriculum  
and Content

ment may be satisfied through credit by examination, correspondence courses, distance learning, or completing the course, according to the provisions of 19 Administrative Code 74.26. *19 TAC 74.11(f)* [See EHDB, EHDC, EHDE, and EI]

Modified curriculum and modified content refer to any reduction of the amount or complexity of the required knowledge and skills in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110–118, 126–128, and 130. Substitutions that are specifically authorized in statute or rule must not be considered modified curriculum or modified content. *19 TAC 89.1070(l)*

Employability and  
Self-Help Skills

Employability and self-help skills are those skills directly related to the preparation of students for employment, including general skills necessary to obtain or retain employment. *19 TAC 89.1070(j)*

Summary of  
Academic  
Achievement and  
Evaluation

All students graduating must be provided with a summary of academic achievement and functional performance as described in 34 C.F.R. 300.305(e)(3). This summary must consider, as appropriate, the views of the parent and student and written recommendations from adult service agencies on how to assist the student in meeting postsecondary goals. An evaluation as required by 34 C.F.R. 300.305(e)(1) (evaluation to determine that the child is no longer a child with a disability), must be included as part of the summary for a student graduating under 19 Administrative Code 89.1070 (b)(2)(A), (B), or (C) or (g)(4)(A), (B), or (C). Students who participate in graduation ceremonies but who are not graduating under subsections (b)(2)(A), (B), or (C) or (g)(4)(A), (B), or (C) and who will remain in school to complete their education do not have to be evaluated. *19 TAC 89.1070(h)–(i)*

*Students  
Entering Grade 9  
in or After the  
2014–15 School  
Year*

A student entering grade 9 in the 2014–15 school year and thereafter who receives special education services may graduate and be awarded a regular high school diploma if the student meets one of the following conditions:

1. The student has demonstrated mastery of the required state standards (or district standards if greater) in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110-118, 126-128, and 130 and satisfactorily completed credit requirements for graduation under the foundation high school program applicable to students in general education as well as satisfactory performance on the required state assessments, unless the student's ARD committee has determined that satisfactory performance on the required state assessments is not necessary for graduation.
2. The student has demonstrated mastery of the required state standards (or district standards if greater) in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110–118, 126–128, and 130 and satisfactorily

completed credit requirements for graduation under the foundation high school program through courses, one or more of which contain modified curriculum that is aligned to the standards applicable to students in general education, as well as satisfactory performance on the required state assessments, unless the student's ARD committee has determined that satisfactory performance on the required state assessments is not necessary for graduation. The student must also successfully complete the student's IEP and meet one of the following conditions:

- a. Consistent with the IEP, the student has obtained full-time employment, based on the student's abilities and local employment opportunities, in addition to mastering sufficient self-help skills to enable the student to maintain the employment without direct and ongoing educational support of the local school district.
- b. Consistent with the IEP, the student has demonstrated mastery of specific employability skills and self-help skills that do not require direct ongoing educational support of the local school district.
- c. The student has access to services that are not within the legal responsibility of public education or employment or educational options for which the student has been prepared by the academic program.
- d. The student no longer meets age eligibility requirements.

When a student receives a diploma under item 2(a), (b), or (c), above, the ARD committee must determine needed educational services upon the request of the student or parent to resume services, as long as the student meets the age eligibility requirements.

*19 TAC 89.1070(b), (k)*

Endorsements

A student receiving special education services may earn an endorsement if the student:

1. Satisfactorily completes the requirements for graduation under the foundation high school program as well as the additional credit requirements in mathematics, science, and elective courses with or without modified curriculum;
2. Satisfactorily completes the courses required for the endorsement without any modified curriculum; and
3. Performs satisfactorily on the required state assessments.

*19 TAC 89.1070(c)*

A student in grade 11 or 12 receiving special education services who has taken each of the state assessments required by 19 Administrative Code Chapter 101, Subchapter CC (relating to Commissioner's Rules Concerning Implementation of the Academic Content Areas Testing Program) or Subchapter DD (relating to Commissioner's Rules Concerning Substitute Assessments for Graduation) but failed to achieve satisfactory performance on no more than two of the assessments is eligible to receive an endorsement if the student has met the requirements of items 1 and 2 above. *19 TAC 89.1070(d)*

In order for a student receiving special education services to use a course to satisfy both a requirement under the foundation high school program and a requirement for an endorsement, the student must satisfactorily complete the course without any modified curriculum. *19 TAC 89.1070(e)*

*Students  
Entering Grade 9  
Before the 2014–  
15 School Year*

A student receiving special education services who entered grade 9 before the 2014–15 school year may graduate and be awarded a high school diploma under the foundation high school program if the student's ARD committee determines that the student should take courses under that program and the student satisfies the requirements of that program. A student transitioning to the Foundation High School Program may earn an endorsement as set out above [see Endorsements, above].

A student receiving special education services in 11th or 12th grade who has taken each of the required state assessments but failed to achieve satisfactory performance on no more than two of the assessments may graduate if the student has satisfied all other applicable graduation requirements. [See Special Education, above, and EKB]

*19 TAC 89.1070(f)*

A student receiving special education services who entered grade 9 before the 2014–15 school year may graduate and be awarded a regular high school diploma if the student meets one of the following conditions:

1. The student has demonstrated mastery of the required state standards (or district standards if greater) in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110–118, 126–128, and 130 and satisfactorily completed credit requirements for graduation under the Recommended or Advanced/Distinguished Achievement Programs, including satisfactory performance on the required state assessments.

2. The student is in grade 11 or 12 and has taken each of the state assessments required by 19 Administrative Code Chapter 101, Subchapter CC (relating to Commissioner's Rules Concerning Implementation of the Academic Content Areas Testing Program) or Subchapter DD (relating to Commissioner's Rules Concerning Substitute Assessments for Graduation) but failed to achieve satisfactory performance on no more than two of the assessments and has met all other applicable graduation requirements in item 1 above.
3. The student has demonstrated mastery of the required state standards (or district standards if greater) in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110–118, 126–128, and 130 and satisfactorily completed credit requirements under the Minimum High School Program, including participation in state assessments. The student's ARD committee shall determine whether satisfactory performance on the required state assessments is necessary for graduation.
4. The student has demonstrated mastery of the required state standards (or district standards if greater) in 19 Administrative Code Chapters 110–118, 126–128, and 130 through courses, one or more of which contain modified content that is aligned to the standards required under the Minimum High School Program as well as the satisfactorily completed credit requirements under the Minimum High School Program, including participation in required state assessments. The student's ARD committee shall determine whether satisfactory performance on the required state assessments is necessary for graduation. The student must also successfully complete the student's IEP and meet one of the following conditions:
  - a. Consistent with the IEP, the student has obtained full-time employment, based on the student's abilities and local employment opportunities, in addition to mastering sufficient self-help skills to enable the student to maintain the employment without direct and ongoing educational support of the local school district;
  - b. Consistent with the IEP, the student has demonstrated mastery of specific employability skills and self-help skills that do not require direct ongoing educational support of the local school district;
  - c. The student has access to services that are not within the legal responsibility of public education, or employment or educational options for which the student has been prepared by the academic program; or

- d. The student no longer meets age eligibility requirements.

When a student receives a diploma under item 3(a), (b), or (c), above, the ARD committee must determine needed educational services upon the request of the student or parent to resume services, as long as the student meets the age eligibility requirements.

*19 TAC 89.1070(g), (k)*

**Graduation of  
Military Dependents**

Course Waiver

District officials shall waive specific courses required for graduation if similar coursework has been satisfactorily completed by a military student in another district or shall provide reasonable justification for denial. Should a waiver not be granted to a student who would qualify to graduate from the sending school, the district shall provide an alternative means of acquiring required coursework so that graduation may occur on time.

Transfers During  
Senior Year

Should a military student transferring at the beginning or during the student's senior year be ineligible to graduate from the district after all alternatives have been considered, the sending and receiving districts shall ensure the receipt of a diploma from the sending district, if the student meets the graduation requirements of the sending district. In the event that one of the states in question is not a member of this compact, the member state shall use best efforts to facilitate the on-time graduation of the student.

Substitute Passing  
Standard

The commissioner shall adopt a passing standard on one or more national norm-referenced achievement tests for purposes of permitting a qualified military dependent to meet that standard as a substitute for completing a specific course otherwise required for graduation. The passing standard is available only for a student who enrolls in a public school in this state for the first time after completing the ninth grade or who reenrolls in a public school in this state at or above the tenth grade level after an absence of at least two years from the public schools of this state. Each passing standard in effect when a student first enrolls in a Texas public high school remains applicable to the student for the duration of the student's high school enrollment, regardless of any subsequent revision of the standard.

*Education Code 162.002 art. VII, A, C [See FDD]*

**Graduation of  
Student Who Is  
Homeless or in  
Conservatorship of  
DFPS**

If an 11th or 12th grade student who is homeless or in the conservatorship of the Department of Family and Protective Services transfers to a different school district and the student is ineligible to graduate from the district to which the student transfers, the district from which the student transferred shall award a diploma at the student's request, if the student meets the graduation requirements of the district from which the student transferred. "Student who is

Arlington ISD  
220901

ACADEMIC ACHIEVEMENT  
GRADUATION

EIF  
(LEGAL)

homeless” has the meaning assigned to the term “homeless children and youths” under 42 U.S.C. Section 11434a. *Education Code 28.025(i)*

**Consent to Medical Treatment**

The school in which a minor student is enrolled may consent to medical, dental, psychological, and surgical treatment of that student, provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. The person having the power to consent as otherwise provided by law cannot be contacted.
2. Actual notice to the contrary has not been given by that person.
3. Written authorization to consent has been received from that person.

*Family Code 32.001(a)(4)*

**Form of Consent**

Consent to medical treatment under this policy shall be in writing, signed by the school official giving consent, and given to the doctor, hospital, or other medical facility that administers the treatment. The consent must contain:

1. The name of the student.
2. The name of one or both parents, if known, and the name of the managing conservator or guardian of the student, if either has been appointed.
3. The name of the person giving consent and the person's relation to the student.
4. A statement of the nature of the medical treatment to be given.
5. The date on which the treatment is to begin.

*Family Code 32.002*

**Minor's Consent To Treatment**

A minor may consent to medical, dental, psychological, and surgical treatment furnished by a licensed physician or dentist if the minor:

1. Is 16 years of age and residing separate and apart from the minor's parents, managing conservator, or guardian, with or without the consent of the parents, conservator, or guardian and regardless of the duration of the residence, and is managing his or her own financial affairs, regardless of the source of the income;
2. Consents to the diagnosis and treatment of any infectious, contagious, or communicable disease required to be reported to the Texas Department of State Health Services (DSHS), including all reportable diseases under Health and Safety Code 81.041;



3. Is unmarried and pregnant, and consents to hospital, medical, or surgical treatment, other than abortion, related to her pregnancy; or
4. Consents to examination and treatment for drug or chemical addiction, drug or chemical dependency, or any other condition directly related to drug or chemical use.

*Family Code 32.003; Planned Parenthood of Cent. Mo. v. Danforth, 428 U.S. 52 (1976); Bellotti v. Baird, 443 U.S. 622 (1979)*

**Administering Medication**

Upon adoption of policies concerning the administration of medication to students by school district employees, a district, a board, and a district's employees are immune as described below, provided:

1. The district has received a written request to administer the medication from the parent, legal guardian, or other person having legal control of the student.
2. When administering prescription medication, the medication is administered either:
  - a. From a container that appears to be the original container and to be properly labeled; or
  - b. From a properly labeled unit dosage container filled by a registered nurse or another qualified district employee, as determined by district policy, from a container that appears to be the original container and to be properly labeled.

**By Volunteer Professionals**

If a district provides liability insurance for a licensed physician or registered nurse who provides volunteer services to the district, a board may allow the physician or nurse to administer to any student nonprescription medication or medication currently prescribed for the student by the student's personal physician.

**Immunity from Civil Liability**

A district, a board, and its employees shall be immune from civil liability for damages or injuries resulting from the administration of medication to a student in accordance with this policy.

*Education Code 22.052(a), (b)*

[See DG regarding protection of nurses for refusal to perform acts.]

**Nursing Peer Review Committees**

"Nursing peer review committee" includes a committee established under the authority of the governing body of a political subdivision for the purpose of conducting peer review.

A person shall establish a nursing peer review committee to conduct nursing peer review under Occupations Code Chapter 303 and Chapter 301 if:

1. For vocational nurses, the person regularly employs, hires, or contracts for the services of eight or more nurses; and
2. For professional nurses, if the person regularly employs, hires, or contracts for the services of eight or more nurses, at least four of whom are registered nurses.

A person required to establish a nursing peer review committee under this section may contract with another entity to conduct peer review for the person.

*Occupations Code 303.001(4), .0015*

**Self-Administration  
of Asthma or  
Anaphylaxis  
Medicine**

A student with asthma or anaphylaxis may possess and self-administer prescription asthma or anaphylaxis medicine while on school property or at a school-related event or activity if:

1. The medicine has been prescribed for that student as indicated by the prescription label on the medicine;
2. The student has demonstrated to the student's physician or other licensed health-care provider and the school nurse, if available, the skill level necessary to self-administer the prescription medication, including the use of any device required to administer the medication;
3. The self-administration is done in compliance with the prescription or written instructions from the student's physician or other licensed health-care provider; and
4. A parent of the student provides to the school:
  - a. Written authorization, signed by the parent, for the student to self-administer the prescription medicine while on school property or at a school-related event or activity; and
  - b. A written statement, signed by the student's physician or other licensed health-care provider, that states:
    - (1) That the student has asthma or anaphylaxis and is capable of self-administering the medicine;
    - (2) The name and purpose of the medicine;
    - (3) The prescribed dosage for the medicine;

- (4) The times at which or circumstances under which the medicine may be administered; and
- (5) The period for which the medicine is prescribed.

The physician's statement must be kept on file in the school nurse's office, or, if there is no school nurse, in the office of the principal of the school the student attends.

[See FFAF for care of students with diagnosed food allergies at risk for anaphylaxis.]

No Waiver of  
Immunity

The provisions above neither waive any liability or immunity nor create any liability for or a cause of action against a district, a board, or its employees.

*Education Code 38.015*

**Sunscreen Products**

A student may possess and use a topical sunscreen product while on school property or at a school-related event or activity to avoid overexposure to the sun and not for the medical treatment of an injury or illness if the product is approved by the federal Food and Drug Administration for over-the-counter use. This provision does not waive any immunity from liability of a district, its board, or its employees; or create any liability for or a cause of action against a district, its board, or its employees. *Education Code 38.021*

**Dietary Supplements**

A school district employee commits a Class C misdemeanor offense if the employee:

1. Knowingly sells, markets, or distributes a dietary supplement that contains performance enhancing compounds to a primary or secondary education student with whom the employee has contact as part of the employee's school district duties; or
2. Knowingly endorses or suggests the ingestion, intranasal application, or inhalation of a dietary supplement that contains performance enhancing compounds by a primary or secondary education student with whom the employee has contact as part of the employee's school district duties.

*Education Code 38.011(a), (c)*

**Prescription  
Medication and  
Special Education  
Students**

An employee of a district is prohibited from requiring a child to obtain a prescription for a substance covered under the federal Controlled Substances Act (21 U.S.C. 801 et seq.) as a condition of attending school, receiving an evaluation for special education, or receiving special education and related services.

An employee is not prohibited from consulting or sharing classroom-based observations with parents regarding a student's academic and functional performance, behavior in the classroom or school, or the need for evaluation for special education or related services.

*20 U.S.C. 1412(a)(25)*

**Psychotropics and  
Psychiatric  
Evaluations**

A school district employee may not:

1. Recommend that a student use a psychotropic drug; or
2. Suggest any particular diagnosis; or
3. Use the refusal by a parent to consent to administration of a psychotropic drug to a student or to a psychiatric evaluation or examination of a student as grounds, by itself, for prohibiting the child from attending a class or participating in a school-related activity.

Psychotropic drug means a substance that is used in the diagnosis, treatment, or prevention of a disease or as a component of a medication and intended to have an altering effect on perception, emotion, or behavior.

Education Code 38.016(b) does not:

1. Prevent an appropriate referral under the Child Find system required under 20 U.S.C. Section 1412, as amended; or
2. Prohibit a school district employee who is a registered nurse, advanced nurse practitioner, physician, or certified or appropriately credentialed mental health professional from recommending that a child be evaluated by an appropriate medical practitioner; or
3. Prohibit a school employee from discussing any aspect of a child's behavior or academic progress with the child's parent or another school district employee.

A board shall adopt a policy to ensure implementation and enforcement of Education Code 38.016.

A violation of Education Code 38.016(b) does not override the immunity from personal liability granted in Education Code 22.0511 or other law or a district's sovereign or governmental immunity.

*Education Code 38.016*

**Child Abuse  
Reporting**

An employee may not use or threaten to use the refusal of a parent, guardian, or managing or possessory conservator to administer or consent to the administration of a psychotropic drug to a

child, or to consent to any other psychiatric or psychological testing or treatment of the child, as the sole basis for making a report of neglect, unless the employee has cause to believe that the refusal:

1. Presents a substantial risk of death, disfigurement, or bodily injury to the child; or
2. Has resulted in an observable and material impairment to the growth, development, or functioning of the child.

*Education Code 26.0091; Family Code 261.111(a) [See FFG]*

**Opioid Antagonist Medication**

A person or organization acting under a standing order issued by a prescriber may store an opioid antagonist and may distribute an opioid antagonist, provided the person or organization does not request or receive compensation for storage or distribution. *Health and Safety Code 483.104*

A prescriber may, directly or by standing order, prescribe an opioid antagonist to a person in a position to assist a person experiencing an opioid-related drug overdose. *Health and Safety Code 483.102; 22 TAC 170.6*

Immunity

A person who, acting in good faith and with reasonable care, administers or does not administer an opioid antagonist to another person whom the person believes is suffering an opioid-related drug overdose is not subject to criminal prosecution, sanction under any professional licensing statute, or civil liability, for an act or omission resulting from the administration of or failure to administer the opioid antagonist. *Health and Safety Code 483.106*

---

**Note:** The following provisions apply only to a district that will adopt an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector policy.

---

**Maintenance and Administration of Epinephrine Auto-Injectors**

A district may adopt and implement a policy regarding the maintenance, administration, and disposal of epinephrine auto-injectors at each campus in the district.

If a policy is adopted, the policy:

1. Must provide that school personnel and school volunteers who are authorized and trained may administer an epinephrine auto-injector to a person who is reasonably believed to be experiencing anaphylaxis on a school campus; and
2. May provide that school personnel and school volunteers who are authorized and trained may administer an epinephrine auto-injector to a person who is reasonably believed to be experiencing anaphylaxis at an off-campus school event or while in transit to or from a school event.

A district that adopts a policy must require that each campus have one or more school personnel members or school volunteers authorized and trained to administer an epinephrine auto-injector present during all hours the campus is open.

The supply of epinephrine auto-injectors at each campus must be stored in a secure location and be easily accessible to school personnel and school volunteers authorized and trained to administer an epinephrine auto-injector.

*Education Code 38.208*

Definitions

*“All Hours the  
Campus Is Open”*

“All hours the campus is open” is defined as, at a minimum, during regular on-campus school hours, and when school personnel are physically on site for school-sponsored activities.

*“Campus”*

A “campus” is defined as a unit of a school district that has an assigned administrator, has enrolled students who are counted for average daily attendance, has assigned instructional staff, provides instructional services to students, has one or more grades in the range from early childhood education through grade 12 or is ungraded, and complies with relevant Texas laws.

*“Unassigned  
Epinephrine  
Auto-Injector”*

An “unassigned epinephrine auto-injector” is an epinephrine auto-injector prescribed by an authorized health-care provider in the name of the school issued with a non-patient-specific standing delegation order for the administration of an epinephrine auto-injector, issued by a physician or person who has been delegated prescriptive authority under Occupations Code Chapter 157.

*25 TAC 37.603*

Prompt Notification

Local emergency medical services must be promptly notified by the school when an individual is suspected of experiencing anaphylaxis and when an epinephrine auto-injector is administered. If the trained school personnel or school volunteer is the only individual available to notify emergency medical services, the trained individual should administer the unassigned epinephrine auto-injector before notifying emergency medical services.

The parent, legal guardian, or emergency contact must be promptly notified by the school when an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector is utilized on their child as soon as is feasible during the emergency response to suspected anaphylaxis.

*25 TAC 37.605(e)–(f)*

Records

School records of the administration of the unassigned epinephrine auto-injector and suspected anaphylaxis must be provided to the parent or guardian of the recipient upon request. *25 TAC 37.605(f)*

Reports

Not later than the tenth business day after the date a school personnel member or school volunteer administers an epinephrine auto-injector in accordance with district policy, the school shall send a report to the school district; the physician who prescribed the epinephrine auto-injector; the commissioner of education; and the commissioner of state health services.

The report must include the following information:

1. The age of the person who received the administration of the epinephrine auto-injector;
2. Whether the person who received the administration of the epinephrine auto-injector was a student, a school personnel member or school volunteer, or a visitor;
3. The physical location where the epinephrine auto-injector was administered;
4. The number of doses of epinephrine auto-injector administered;
5. The title of the person who administered the epinephrine auto-injector; and
6. Any other information required by the commissioner of education.

*Education Code 38.209*

Notifications to the commissioner of DSHS shall be submitted on the designated electronic form available on the DSHS School Health Program website. *25 TAC 37.608*

Personnel or  
Volunteers

At each campus in which a school adopts an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector policy, the principal may assign school personnel or school volunteers to be trained to administer unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors or seek school personnel or school volunteers who volunteer to be trained to administer unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors.

In order to increase the number of trained individuals in the administration of unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors, schools may distribute to school personnel or school volunteers in the district, at least once per school year, a notice that includes a description of the request seeking volunteers to be trained to administer an epinephrine auto-injector to a person believed to be experiencing anaphylaxis and a description of the training that the school personnel or school volunteers will receive in the administration of epinephrine with an auto-injector.

*25 TAC 37.606(a)-(b)*



Signed Statement	Trained school personnel or school volunteers who administer the unassigned epinephrine auto-injector must submit a signed statement indicating that they agree to perform the service of administering an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector to a student or individual that may be experiencing anaphylaxis. <i>25 TAC 37.606(c)</i>
Training	<p>A district that adopts an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector written policy is responsible for training school personnel and school volunteers in the recognizing of anaphylaxis signs and symptoms and administration of an unassigned epinephrine auto-injector.</p> <p>Each assigned school personnel or school volunteer shall receive initial training and an annual refresher training. Training shall be consistent with the most recent <a href="#">Voluntary Guidelines for Managing Food Allergies in Schools and Early Care and Education Programs</a><sup>1</sup> published by the federal Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.</p> <p><i>25 TAC 37.607</i></p> <p>Training may be provided in a formal training session or through an online education course. Training must include information on properly inspecting unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors for usage and expiration. <i>25 TAC 37.607(1)–(2)</i></p> <p>Training must include information on implementing emergency procedures, if necessary, after administering an epinephrine auto-injector, and properly disposing of used or expired epinephrine auto-injectors. A district shall maintain records on the required training. <i>Education Code 38.210</i></p> <p>The initial training must include hands-on training with an epinephrine auto-injector trainer. The annual refresher training must include a hands-on demonstration of administration skills. The training must also include information about promptly notifying local emergency medical services.</p> <p>Each school campus shall maintain training records and make available upon request a list of those school personnel or school volunteers trained and authorized to administer the unassigned epinephrine auto-injector on the campus.</p> <p><i>25 TAC 37.607(3)–(6)</i></p>
Standing Orders	<p>A physician or person who has been delegated prescriptive authority under Occupations Code Chapter 157 may prescribe epinephrine auto-injectors in the name of a school district in accordance with law. <i>Education Code 38.211</i></p> <p>A school district shall obtain a prescription from an authorized health-care provider each year, to stock, possess, and maintain at</p>

	<p>least one unassigned adult epinephrine auto-injector pack (two doses) on each school campus.</p> <p>A school may choose to stock unassigned pediatric epinephrine auto-injector packs, based on the need of the school's population.</p> <p><i>25 TAC 37.605(a)</i></p>
Epinephrine Coordinator	<p>The superintendent will designate appropriate school personnel to coordinate and manage policy implementation, including training of school personnel, and the acquisition or purchase, usage, expiration, and disposal of unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors. Throughout the school calendar year, the designated school personnel shall coordinate with each campus to ensure that the unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors are checked monthly for expiration and usage and the findings are documented. <i>19 TAC 37.605(b)</i></p>
Notice to Parents	<p>If a district implements a policy for the maintenance, administration, and disposal of epinephrine auto-injectors, the district shall provide written notice to a parent or guardian of each student enrolled in the district or school. Notice must be provided before the policy is implemented by the district or school and before the start of each school year. <i>Education Code 38.212</i></p> <p>A district shall provide electronic or written notice to the parent or guardian of each student.</p> <p>If a district changes or discontinues the policy under this subchapter, written or electronic notice detailing the change or discontinuation must be provided to the parent or guardian of each student within 15 calendar days.</p> <p><i>25 TAC 37.609</i></p>
Storage	<p>Unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors shall be stored in a secure, easily accessible area for an emergency, in accordance with manufacturer's guidelines. It is recommended that the school administrator develop a map to be placed in high traffic areas that indicates the location of the unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors on each school campus. It is recommended that the map also indicates the locations of the automated external defibrillator (AED). <i>25 TAC 37.605(h)</i></p>
Replacement	<p>The school district shall develop a plan to replace, as soon as reasonably possible, any unassigned epinephrine auto-injector that is used or close to expiration. <i>25 TAC 37.605(i)</i></p>
Disposal	<p>Used unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors shall be considered infectious waste and shall be disposed of according to the school's bloodborne pathogen control policy.</p>

Expired unassigned epinephrine auto-injectors shall be disposed of according to the school's medication disposal policy.

*25 TAC 37.605(j)–(k)* [See DBB]

Gifts, Grants, and  
Donations

A district may accept gifts, grants, donations, and federal and local funds to implement its policy. *Education Code 38.213*

Immunity from  
Liability

A person who in good faith takes, or fails to take, any action related to the administration of epinephrine auto-injectors is immune from civil or criminal liability or disciplinary action resulting from that action or failure to act, including:

1. Issuing an order for epinephrine auto-injectors;
2. Supervising or delegating the administration of an epinephrine auto-injector;
3. Possessing, maintaining, storing, or disposing of an epinephrine auto-injector;
4. Prescribing an epinephrine auto-injector;
5. Dispensing an epinephrine auto-injector;
6. Administering, or assisting in administering, an epinephrine auto-injector;
7. Providing, or assisting in providing, training, consultation, or advice in the development, adoption, or implementation of policies, guidelines, rules, or plans; or
8. Undertaking any other act permitted or required under Education Code Chapter 38, Subchapter E.

A school district and school personnel and school volunteers are immune from suit resulting from an act, or failure to act, under Education Code Chapter 38, Subchapter E, including an act or failure to act under related policies and procedures.

An act or failure to act by school personnel or a school volunteer, including an act or failure to act under related policies and procedures, is the exercise of judgment or discretion on the part of the school personnel or school volunteer and is not considered to be a ministerial act for purposes of liability of the school district or open-enrollment charter school.

*Education Code 38.215*

---

<sup>1</sup> CDC Voluntary Guidelines for Managing Food Allergies:  
<https://www.cdc.gov/healthyschools/foodallergies/index.htm>

All publications edited, published, and distributed in print or electronically in the name of the District or an individual campus shall be under the control of the campus and District administration and the Board. All school-sponsored publications approved by a principal and published by students at an individual campus shall be part of the instructional program, under the supervision of a faculty sponsor.

---

**Note:** For provisions regarding advertising, including advertising in District- or school-sponsored publications, see GKB.

---

**Complaints**

In this policy, the terms “complaint” and “grievance” shall have the same meaning.

Other Complaint  
Processes

Student or parent complaints shall be filed in accordance with this policy, except as required by the policies listed below. Some of these policies require appeals to be submitted in accordance with FNG after the relevant complaint process:

1. Complaints alleging discrimination or harassment based on race, color, gender, national origin, disability, or religion shall be submitted in accordance with FFH.
2. Complaints concerning dating violence shall be submitted in accordance with FFH.
3. Complaints concerning retaliation related to discrimination and harassment shall be submitted in accordance with FFH.
4. Complaints concerning bullying or retaliation related to bullying shall be submitted in accordance with FFI.
5. Complaints concerning failure to award credit or a final grade on the basis of attendance shall be submitted in accordance with FEC.
6. Complaints concerning expulsion shall be submitted in accordance with FOD and the Student Code of Conduct.
7. Complaints concerning any final decisions of the gifted and talented selection committee regarding selection for or exit from the gifted program shall be submitted in accordance with EHBB.
8. Complaints concerning identification, evaluation, or educational placement of a student with a disability within the scope of Section 504 shall be submitted in accordance with FB and the procedural safeguards handbook.
9. Complaints concerning identification, evaluation, educational placement, or discipline of a student with a disability within the scope of the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act shall be submitted in accordance with EHBAE, FOF, and the procedural safeguards handbook provided to parents of all students referred to special education.
10. Complaints concerning instructional resources shall be submitted in accordance with EF.
11. Complaints concerning a commissioned peace officer who is an employee of the District shall be submitted in accordance with CKE.

STUDENT RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES  
STUDENT AND PARENT COMPLAINTS/GRIEVANCES

FNG  
(LOCAL)

12. Complaints concerning intradistrict transfers or campus assignment shall be submitted in accordance with FDB.
13. Complaints concerning admission, placement, or services provided for a homeless student shall be submitted in accordance with FDC.

Complaints regarding refusal of entry to or ejection from District property based on Education Code 37.105 shall be filed in accordance with this policy. However, the timelines shall be adjusted as necessary to permit the complainant to address the Board in person within 90 days of filing the initial complaint, unless the complaint is resolved before the Board considers it. [See GKA(LEGAL)]

**Notice to Students and Parents**

The District shall inform students and parents of this policy through appropriate District publications.

**Guiding Principles**

Informal Process

The Board encourages students and parents to discuss their concerns with the appropriate teacher, principal, or other campus administrator who has the authority to address the concerns. Concerns should be expressed as soon as possible to allow early resolution at the lowest possible administrative level.

Informal resolution shall be encouraged but shall not extend any deadlines in this policy, except by mutual written consent.

Formal Process

A student or parent may initiate the formal process described below by timely filing a written complaint form.

Even after initiating the formal complaint process, students and parents are encouraged to seek informal resolution of their concerns. A student or parent whose concerns are resolved may withdraw a formal complaint at any time.

The process described in this policy shall not be construed to create new or additional rights beyond those granted by law or Board policy, nor to require a full evidentiary hearing or "mini-trial" at any level.

**Freedom from Retaliation**

Neither the Board nor any District employee shall unlawfully retaliate against any student or parent for bringing a concern or complaint.

**General Provisions**

Filing

Complaint forms and appeal notices may be filed by hand-delivery, by electronic communication, including email and fax, or by U.S. Mail. Hand-delivered filings shall be timely filed if received by the appropriate administrator or designee by the close of business on the deadline. Filings submitted by electronic communication shall be timely filed if they are received by the close of business on the deadline, as indicated by the date/time shown on the electronic

STUDENT RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES  
STUDENT AND PARENT COMPLAINTS/GRIEVANCES

FNG  
(LOCAL)

	<p>communication. Mail filings shall be timely filed if they are post-marked by U.S. Mail on or before the deadline and received by the appropriate administrator or designated representative no more than three days after the deadline.</p>
Scheduling Conferences	<p>The District shall make reasonable attempts to schedule conferences at a mutually agreeable time. If a student or parent fails to appear at a scheduled conference, the District may hold the conference and issue a decision in the student's or parent's absence.</p>
Response	<p>At Levels One, Two, and Three, "response" shall mean a written communication to the student or parent from the appropriate administrator. Responses may be hand-delivered, sent by electronic communication to the student's or parent's email address of record, or sent by U.S. Mail to the student's or parent's mailing address of record. Mailed responses shall be timely if they are post-marked by U.S. Mail on or before the deadline.</p>
Days	<p>"Days" shall mean District business days. In calculating timelines under this policy, the day a document is filed is "day zero." The following business day is "day one."</p>
Representative	<p>"Representative" shall mean any person who or organization that is designated by the student or parent to represent the student or parent in the complaint process. A student may be represented by an adult at any level of the complaint.</p> <p>The student or parent may designate a representative through written notice to the District at any level of this process. If the student or parent designates a representative with fewer than three days' notice to the District before a scheduled conference or hearing, the District may reschedule the conference or hearing to a later date, if desired, in order to include the District's counsel. The District may be represented by counsel at any level of the process.</p>
Consolidating Complaints	<p>Complaints arising out of an event or a series of related events shall be addressed in one complaint. A student or parent shall not file separate or serial complaints arising from any event or series of events that have been or could have been addressed in a previous complaint.</p>
Untimely Filings	<p>All time limits shall be strictly followed unless modified by mutual written consent.</p> <p>If a complaint form or appeal notice is not timely filed, the complaint may be dismissed, on written notice to the student or parent, at any point during the complaint process. The student or parent may appeal the dismissal by seeking review in writing within ten days from the date of the written dismissal notice, starting at the</p>



STUDENT RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES  
STUDENT AND PARENT COMPLAINTS/GRIEVANCES

FNG  
(LOCAL)

level at which the complaint was dismissed. Such appeal shall be limited to the issue of timeliness.

Costs Incurred

Each party shall pay its own costs incurred in the course of the complaint.

Complaint and  
Appeal Forms

Complaints and appeals under this policy shall be submitted in writing on a form provided by the District. Forms may be obtained from the District's legal office.

Copies of any documents that support the complaint should be attached to the complaint form. If the student or parent does not have copies of these documents, copies may be presented at the Level One conference. After the Level One conference, no new documents may be submitted by the student or parent unless the student or parent did not know the documents existed before the Level One conference.

A complaint or appeal form that is incomplete in any material aspect may be dismissed but may be refiled with all the required information if the refiled is within the designated time for filing.

**Level One**

Complaint forms must be filed:

1. Within 15 days of the date the student or parent first knew, or with reasonable diligence should have known, of the decision or action giving rise to the complaint or grievance; and
2. With the lowest level administrator who has the authority to remedy the alleged problem.

In most circumstances, students and parents shall file Level One complaints with the campus principal.

If the only administrator who has authority to remedy the alleged problem is the Superintendent or designee, the complaint may begin at Level Three following the procedure, including deadlines, for filing the complaint form at Level One.

If the complaint is not filed with the appropriate administrator, the receiving administrator must note the date and time the complaint form was received and immediately forward the complaint form to the appropriate administrator.

The appropriate administrator shall investigate as necessary and schedule a conference with the student or parent within ten days after receipt of the written complaint. The administrator may set reasonable time limits for the conference.

Absent extenuating circumstances, the administrator shall provide the student or parent a written response within ten days following

the conference. The written response shall set forth the basis of the decision. In reaching a decision, the administrator may consider information provided at the Level One conference and any other relevant documents or information the administrator believes will help resolve the complaint.

## **Level Two**

If the student or parent did not receive the relief requested at Level One or if the time for a response has expired, the student or parent may request a conference with the principal to appeal the Level One decision.

The appeal notice must be filed in writing, on a form provided by the District, within ten days of the date of the written Level One response or, if no response was received, within ten days of the Level One response deadline.

After receiving notice of the appeal, the Level One administrator shall prepare and forward a record of the Level One complaint to the Level Two administrator. The student or parent may request a copy of the Level One record.

The Level One record shall include:

1. The original complaint form and any attachments.
2. All other documents submitted by the student or parent at Level One.
3. The written response issued at Level One and any attachments.
4. All other documents relied upon by the Level One administrator in reaching the Level One decision.

The Level Two administrator shall schedule a conference within ten days after the appeal notice is filed. The conference shall be limited to the issues and documents considered at Level One. At the conference, the student or parent may provide information concerning any documents or information relied upon by the administration for the Level One decision. The Level Two administrator may set reasonable time limits for the conference.

The Level Two administrator shall provide the student or parent a written response within ten days following the conference. The written response shall set forth the basis of the decision. In reaching a decision, the Level Two administrator may consider the Level One record, information provided at the Level Two conference, and any other relevant documents or information the Level Two administrator believes will help resolve the complaint.

Recordings of the Level One and Level Two conferences, if any, shall be maintained with the Level One and Level Two records.

### **Level Three**

If the student or parent did not receive the relief requested at Level Two or if the time for a response has expired, the student or parent may request a conference with the Superintendent or designee to appeal the Level Two decision.

The appeal notice must be filed in writing, on a form provided by the District, within ten days of the date of the written Level Two response or, if no response was received, within ten days of the Level Two response deadline. If the appeal notice is untimely, not on the District's form, or incomplete in any material or substantial way, the Superintendent, after consultation with the Board President, may dismiss the complaint and provide written notice of dismissal to the complainant.

After receiving notice of the appeal, the Level Two administrator shall prepare and forward a record of the Level Two appeal to the Level Three administrator. The student or parent may request a copy of the Level Two record.

The Level Two record shall include:

1. The Level One record.
2. The notice of appeal from Level One to Level Two.
3. The written response issued at Level Two and any attachments.
4. All other documents relied upon by the Level Two administrator in reaching the Level Two decision.

The Level Three administrator shall schedule a conference within ten days after the appeal notice is filed. The conference shall be limited to the issues and documents considered at Level One and Level Two and identified in the Level Three appeal notice. At the conference, the student or parent may provide information concerning any documents or information relied upon by the administration for the Level Two decision. The Level Three administrator may set reasonable time limits for the conference.

The Level Three administrator shall provide the student or parent a written response within ten days following the conference. The written response shall set forth the basis of the decision. In reaching a decision, the Level Three administrator may consider the Level One and Level Two records, information provided at the Level

Three conference, and any other relevant documents or information the Level Three administrator believes will help resolve the complaint.

Recordings of the Level One, Level Two, and Level Three conferences, if any, shall be maintained with the Level One, Level Two, and Level Three records.

#### **Level Four**

If the student or parent did not receive the relief requested at Level Three or if the time for a response has expired, the student or parent may appeal the decision to the Board.

The appeal notice must be filed in writing, on a form provided by the District, within ten days of the date of the written Level Three response or, if no response was received, within ten days of the Level Three response deadline.

The Superintendent or designee shall inform the student or parent of the date, time, and place of the Board meeting at which the complaint will be on the agenda for presentation to the Board.

The Superintendent or designee shall provide the Board the record of the Level Three appeal. The student or parent may request a copy of the Level Three record.

The Level Three record shall include:

1. The Level One record.
2. The Level Two record.
3. The notice of appeal from Level Two to Level Three.
4. The written response issued at Level Three and any attachments.
5. All other documents relied upon by the administration in reaching the Level Three decision.

The appeal shall be limited to the issues and documents considered at Level Three, except that if at the Level Four hearing, the administration intends to rely on evidence not included in the Level Three record, the administration shall provide the student or parent notice of the nature of the evidence at least three days before the hearing.

The District shall determine whether the complaint will be presented in open or closed meeting in accordance with the Texas Open Meetings Act and other applicable law. [See BE]

STUDENT RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES  
STUDENT AND PARENT COMPLAINTS/GRIEVANCES

FNG  
(LOCAL)

The presiding officer may set reasonable time limits and guidelines for the presentation, including an opportunity for the student or parent and administration to each make a presentation and provide rebuttal and an opportunity for questioning by the Board. The Board shall hear the complaint and may request that the administration provide an explanation for the decisions at the preceding levels.

In addition to any other record of the Board meeting required by law, the Board shall prepare a separate record of the Level Four presentation. The Level Four presentation, including the presentation by the student or parent or the student's representative, any presentation from the administration, and questions from the Board with responses, shall be recorded by audio recording, video/audio recording, or court reporter.

The Board shall then consider the complaint. It may give notice of its decision orally or in writing at any time up to and including the next regularly scheduled Board meeting. If the Board does not make a decision regarding the complaint by the end of the next regularly scheduled meeting, the lack of a response by the Board upholds the administrative decision at Level Three.

**Meetings with  
Juvenile Board**

A board or designee shall regularly meet with either:

1. The juvenile board for the county in which a district's central administrative office is located; or
2. The juvenile board's designee.

The meeting shall be called by the board president and shall address supervision and rehabilitative services appropriate for expelled students and students assigned to disciplinary alternative education programs (DAEPs).

Matters for discussion shall include:

1. Service by probation officers at the DAEP site;
2. Recruitment of volunteers to serve as mentors and provide tutoring services; and
3. Coordination with other social service agencies.

*Education Code 37.013*

**Juvenile Justice  
Alternative  
Education Program**

For the purposes of the following provisions, only a DAEP operated under the authority of a juvenile board of a county is considered a juvenile justice alternative education program (JJAEP).

Mandatory JJAEP

The juvenile board of a county with a population greater than 125,000 shall develop a JJAEP, subject to the approval of the Texas Juvenile Justice Department (TJJD).

Voluntary JJAEP

The juvenile board of a county with a population of 125,000 or less may develop a JJAEP. Such a JJAEP is not required to be approved by the TJJD. Further, it is not subject to Education Code 37.011(c), (d), (f), (g), (k) or (m).

*Education Code 37.011(a), (k), (m)*

County Population

A county with a population greater than 125,000 is considered to be a county with a population of 125,000 or less if:

1. The county had a population of 125,000 or less according to the 2000 federal census and the juvenile board of the county enters into, with the approval of the TJJD, a memorandum of understanding (MOU) with each school district within the county that:
  - a. Outlines the responsibilities of the board and school districts in minimizing the number of students expelled without receiving alternative educational services; and
  - b. Includes the coordination procedures required by Education Code 37.013, above.

2. Has a population of 180,000 or less; is adjacent to two counties, each of which has a population of more than 1.7 million; and has seven or more school districts located wholly within the county's boundaries.
3. Has a population of more than 200,000 and less than 220,000; has five or more school districts located wholly within the county's boundaries; and has located in the county a JJAEP that, on May 1, 2011, served fewer than 15 students.

*Education Code 37.011(a-1)–(a-3)*

---

**Note:** The following provisions apply to all districts that operate JJAEPs, whether voluntary or mandatory.

---

**Placement of  
Students in JJAEP—  
Expelled Students**

Court-Ordered  
Placement

An expelled student shall, to the extent provided by law or by the MOU, immediately attend the educational program from the date of expulsion. *Education Code 37.010(a)* [See FOD]

If a student admitted under Education Code 25.001(b) is expelled for conduct for which expulsion is required under Education Code 37.007, the juvenile court, juvenile board, or juvenile board's designee, as appropriate, shall:

1. If the student is placed on probation under Family Code 54.04, order the student to attend the JJAEP in the county in which the student resides from the date of disposition as a condition of probation, unless the child is placed in a post-adjudication treatment facility;
2. If the student is placed on deferred prosecution under Family Code 53.03 by the court, prosecutor, or probation department, require the student to immediately attend the JJAEP in the county in which the student resides for a period not to exceed six months as a condition of the deferred prosecution;
3. In determining the condition of the deferred prosecution or court-ordered probation, consider the length of a district's expulsion order for the student; and
4. Provide timely educational services to the student in the JJAEP in the county in which the student resides, regardless of the student's age or whether the juvenile court has jurisdiction over the student. This provision does not require that educational services be provided to a student who is not entitled to admission under Education Code 25.001(b).

*Education Code 37.011(b)–(b-1)*



EXPULSION  
JUVENILE JUSTICE ALTERNATIVE EDUCATION PROGRAM

FODA  
(LEGAL)

	<p>A student transferred to a JJAEP must participate in the program for the full period ordered by the juvenile court, unless a district agrees to accept the student before the date ordered by the juvenile court. <i>Education Code 37.011(i)</i></p>
<p><i>Students Who Move</i></p>	<p>If a student who is ordered to attend a JJAEP moves from one county to another, the juvenile court may request the JJAEP in the county to which the student moves to provide educational services to the student in accordance with the local MOU between the district and the juvenile board in the receiving county. <i>Education Code 37.011(n)</i></p>
<p>Entry and Exit Transition Plans</p>	<p>For each student, the JJAEP must coordinate with the sending school district to develop a written transition plan for entrance into the JJAEP. For each student, the JJAEP must develop a written exit transition plan, provide the plan to the receiving school district, and maintain written verification that the plan was sent. The exit transition plan must include all information regarding courses in progress or completed, current grades for courses in progress, and the number of attendance days and absent days. <i>37 TAC 348.212(b)</i></p>
<p><b>Funding for JJAEPs</b></p>	
<p>Mandatory Expulsions</p>	<p>Except as determined by the commissioner of education, a student served by a JJAEP on the basis of conduct for which expulsion is required under Education Code 37.007 is not eligible for Foundation School Program funding if the JJAEP receives funding from the TJJD. <i>Education Code 37.011(h)</i></p>
<p>Court-Assigned Students</p>	<p>A district is not required to provide funding to a juvenile board for a student who is assigned by a court to a JJAEP but who has not been expelled. <i>Education Code 37.012</i></p>
<p>Title 5 Felony Placements</p>	<p>A district shall reimburse a JJAEP in which a student is placed under Education Code 37.0081 [see FOE] for the actual cost incurred each day the student is enrolled in the program. For purposes of this subsection:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The actual cost incurred each day for the student is determined by the juvenile board of the county operating the program; and</li><li>2. The juvenile board shall determine the actual cost each day of the program based on the board's annual audit.</li></ol> <p><i>Education Code 37.0081(g)</i></p>
<p>Funding for Discretionary Expulsions</p>	<p>Subject to Education Code 37.011(n) [see Students Who Move, above], the district in which a student is enrolled on the date the student is expelled for conduct for which expulsion is permitted but not required under Education Code 37.007 shall, if the student is</p>

served by the JJAEP, provide funding to the juvenile board in an amount determined by the MOU under Education Code 37.011(k).

The amount of the funds transferred is determined by the portion of the school year for which the JJAEP provides educational services to a district.

*Education Code 37.012(a)*

Arbitration of  
Disputes

If a district elects to contract with the juvenile board for the placement of students who are expelled for conduct for which expulsion is permitted but not required under Education Code 37.007, and the juvenile board and the district are unable to reach an agreement in the MOU, either party may request that the issues of dispute be referred to a binding arbitration process that uses a qualified alternative dispute resolution arbitrator.

Each party shall pay its pro rata share of the arbitration costs and shall submit its final proposal to the arbitrator. If the parties cannot agree on an arbitrator, the juvenile board shall select an arbitrator, the district shall select an arbitrator, and those two arbitrators shall select an arbitrator who shall decide the issues in dispute.

*Decision of  
Arbitrator*

The arbitration decision is enforceable in a court in the county in which the JJAEP is located. Any decision by an arbitrator concerning the amount of the funding for a student who is expelled and attending a JJAEP must provide an amount sufficient based on operation of the JJAEP. In determining the amount to be paid by a district for an expelled student enrolled in a JJAEP, the arbitrator shall consider the relevant factors, including evidence of:

1. The actual average total per student expenditure in the district's DAEP;
2. The expected per student cost in the JJAEP as described and agreed on in the MOU and in compliance with Education Code Chapter 37; and
3. The costs necessary to achieve the accountability goals under Education Code Chapter 37.

*Education Code 37.011(p)*

**Fees**

Except as otherwise authorized by law [see FP], a JJAEP may not require a student, or the parent or guardian, to pay any fee, including an entrance or supply fee, for participating in the program. *Education Code 37.012(e)*

**Location and  
Staffing**

A JJAEP may be provided in a facility owned by a district. A district may provide personnel and services for a JJAEP under a contract with the juvenile board. *Education Code 37.011(e)*

**Academic Mission of JJAEP** Academically, the mission of the JJAEP shall be to enable students to perform at grade level.

**Accountability** For purposes of accountability under Education Code Chapters 39 and 39A, a student enrolled in a JJAEP is reported as if the student were enrolled at the student's assigned campus in the student's regularly assigned education program, including a special education program.

*Education Code 37.011(h)*

**Program Requirements** JJAEP programs operated under Education Code 37.011 must comply with the requirements found at 37 Administrative Code Chapter 348. *37 TAC 348.104(b)*

---

**Note:** The following provisions apply only to districts located in counties with a population greater than 125,000 that are not exempt from the application of the provisions as detailed in Education Code 37.011(a-1), (a-2), or (a-3) [see County Population, above].

---

**Memorandum of Understanding** A district and the county juvenile board shall, no later than September 1 of each school year, enter into a joint MOU that:

1. Outlines the responsibilities of the juvenile board concerning the establishment and operation of a JJAEP;
2. Defines the amount and conditions on payments from the district to the juvenile board for students who are served in the JJAEP whose placement was not made on the basis of expulsion required under Education Code 37.007(a), (d), or (e);
3. Establishes that a student may be placed in the JJAEP if the student engages in serious misbehavior, as defined by Education Code 37.007(c);
4. Identifies and requires a timely placement and specifies a term of placement for expelled students for whom the district has received a notice under Family Code 52.041(d);
5. Establishes services for the transitioning of expelled students to the district before the completion of the student's placement in the JJAEP;
6. Establishes a plan that provides transportation services for students placed in the JJAEP;
7. Establishes the circumstances and conditions under which a juvenile may be allowed to remain in the JJAEP setting once the juvenile is no longer under juvenile court jurisdiction; and

8. Establishes a plan to address special education services required by law.

*Education Code 37.011(k)–(m)*

The memorandum of understanding must be submitted to TJJD no later than October 1 of each year. *37 TAC 348.200(c)*

**Placement in JJAEP**

Every expelled student who is not detained or receiving treatment under an order of the juvenile court must be enrolled in an educational program. *Education Code 37.010(a)*

**Operating Requirements**

The JJAEP shall be subject to a written operating policy developed by the local juvenile justice board and submitted to the TJJD for review and comment. The JJAEP is not subject to a requirement imposed by Education Code Title II, other than a reporting requirement or a requirement imposed by Education Code Chapters 37, 39, or 39A. *Education Code 37.011(g)*

**Student Code of Conduct**

The JJAEP shall adopt a Student Code of Conduct in accordance with Education Code 37.001. *Education Code 37.011(c); 37 TAC 348.224*

**Educational Program**

The JJAEP shall focus on English language arts, mathematics, science, social studies, and self-discipline.

Assessment

The JJAEP shall administer assessment instruments under Education Code Chapter 39, Subchapter B.

Equivalency

The JJAEP shall offer a high school equivalency program.

Review of Progress

The juvenile board or the board's designee, with the parent or guardian of each student, shall regularly review the student's academic progress. In the case of a high school student, the board or the board's designee, with the student's parent or guardian, shall review the student's progress toward meeting high school graduation requirements and shall establish a specific graduation plan for the student. The program is not required to provide a course necessary to fulfill a student's high school graduation requirements other than a course specified above.

*Education Code 37.011(d)*

Days and Hours

The JJAEP must operate at least seven hours per day and 180 days per year, except that a JJAEP may apply to the TJJD for a waiver of the 180-day requirement. The commission may not grant a waiver to a JJAEP for a number of days that exceeds the highest number of instructional days waived by the commissioner during the same school year for a district served by the program. *Education Code 37.011(f)*

**Performance  
Reports**

TJJD completes a performance assessment report as required by the General Appropriations Act. At mandatory JJAEPs (i.e., JJAEPs whose operation is required by law), the JJAEP administrator must provide a copy of the report to the juvenile board and the superintendent of each school district that participates in the JJAEP. *37 TAC 348.300*

**Complaints**

In this policy, the terms “complaint” and “grievance” shall have the same meaning.

Other Complaint  
Processes

Complaints by members of the public shall be filed in accordance with this policy, except that complaints concerning instructional resources shall first be filed in accordance with EF, with appeals submitted in accordance with GF after the relevant complaint process.

Complaints regarding refusal of entry to or ejection from District property based on Education Code 37.105 shall be filed in accordance with this policy. However, the timelines shall be adjusted as necessary to permit the complainant to address the Board in person within 90 days of filing the initial complaint, unless the complaint is resolved before the Board considers it. [See GKA(LEGAL)]

**Guiding Principles**

Informal Process

The Board encourages the public to discuss concerns with an appropriate administrator who has the authority to address the concerns. Concerns should be expressed as soon as possible to allow early resolution at the lowest possible administrative level.

Informal resolution shall be encouraged but shall not extend any deadlines in this policy, except by mutual written consent.

Formal Process

An individual may initiate the formal process described below by timely filing a written complaint form.

Even after initiating the formal complaint process, individuals are encouraged to seek informal resolution of their concerns. An individual whose concerns are resolved may withdraw a formal complaint at any time.

The process described in this policy shall not be construed to create new or additional rights beyond those granted by law or Board policy, nor to require a full evidentiary hearing or “mini-trial” at any level.

**Freedom from  
Retaliation**

Neither the Board nor any District employee shall unlawfully retaliate against any individual for bringing a concern or complaint.

**General Provisions**

Filing

Complaint forms and appeal notices may be filed by hand-delivery, by electronic communication, including email and fax, or by U.S. Mail. Hand-delivered filings shall be timely filed if received by the appropriate administrator or designee by the close of business on the deadline. Filings submitted by electronic communication shall be timely filed if they are received by the close of business on the deadline, as indicated by the date/time shown on the electronic communication. Mail filings shall be timely filed if they are post-marked by U.S. Mail on or before the deadline and received by the appropriate administrator or designated representative no more than three days after the deadline.

PUBLIC COMPLAINTS

GF  
(LOCAL)

Scheduling Conferences	The District shall make reasonable attempts to accommodate scheduling conflicts for hearings. If the individual fails to appear at a scheduled conference, the District may hold the conference and issue a decision in the individual's absence.
Response	At Levels One, Two, and Three, "response" shall mean a written communication to the individual from the appropriate administrator. Responses may be hand-delivered, sent by electronic communication to the individual's email address of record, or sent by U.S. Mail to the individual's mailing address of record. Mailed responses shall be timely if they are postmarked by U.S. Mail on or before the deadline.
Days	"Days" shall mean District business days. In calculating timelines under this policy, the day a document is filed is "day zero." The following business day is "day one."
Representative	<p>"Representative" shall mean any person who or organization that is designated by an individual to represent the individual in the complaint process.</p> <p>The individual may designate a representative through written notice to the District at any level of this process. If the individual designates a representative with fewer than three days' notice to the District before a scheduled conference or hearing, the District may reschedule the conference or hearing to a later date, if desired, in order to include the District's counsel. The District may be represented by counsel at any level of the process.</p>
Consolidating Complaints	Complaints arising out of an event or a series of related events shall be addressed in one complaint. An individual shall not file separate or serial complaints arising from any event or series of events that have been or could have been addressed in a previous complaint.
Untimely Filings	<p>All time limits shall be strictly followed unless modified by mutual written consent.</p> <p>If a complaint form or appeal notice is not timely filed, the complaint may be dismissed, on written notice to the individual, at any point during the complaint process. The individual may appeal the dismissal by seeking review in writing within ten days from the date of the written dismissal notice, starting at the level at which the complaint was dismissed. Such appeal shall be limited to the issue of timeliness.</p>
Costs Incurred	Each party shall pay its own costs incurred in the course of the complaint, including copies.



Complaint and  
Appeal Forms

Complaints and appeals under this policy shall be submitted in writing on a form provided by the District.

Copies of any documents that support the complaint should be attached to the complaint form. If the individual does not have copies of these documents, they may be presented at the Level One conference. After the Level One conference, no new documents may be submitted by the individual unless the individual did not know the documents existed before the Level One conference.

A complaint or appeal form that is incomplete in any material aspect may be dismissed but may be refiled with all the required information if the refile is within the designated time for filing.

**Level One**

Complaint forms must be filed:

1. Within 15 days of the date the individual first knew, or with reasonable diligence should have known, of the decision or action giving rise to the complaint or grievance; and
2. With the lowest level administrator who has the authority to remedy the alleged problem.

If the only administrator who has authority to remedy the alleged problem is the Superintendent or designee, the complaint may begin at Level Three following the procedure, including deadlines, for filing the complaint form at Level One.

If the complaint is not filed with the appropriate administrator, the receiving administrator must note the date and time the complaint form was received and immediately forward the complaint form to the appropriate administrator.

The appropriate administrator shall investigate as necessary and schedule a conference with the individual within ten days after receipt of the written complaint. The administrator may set reasonable time limits for the conference.

Absent extenuating circumstances, the administrator shall provide the individual a written response within ten days following the conference. The written response shall set forth the basis of the decision. In reaching a decision, the administrator may consider information provided at the Level One conference and any other relevant documents or information the administrator believes will help resolve the complaint.

**Level Two**

If the individual did not receive the relief requested at Level One or if the time for a response has expired, he or she may request a conference with the Level Two administrator to appeal the Level One decision.

The appeal notice must be filed in writing, on a form provided by the District, within ten days of the date of the written Level One response or, if no response was received, within ten days of the Level One response deadline.

After receiving notice of the appeal, the Level One administrator shall prepare and forward a record of the Level One complaint to the Level Two administrator. The individual may request a copy of the Level One record.

The Level One record shall include:

1. The original complaint form and any attachments.
2. All other documents submitted by the individual at Level One.
3. The written response issued at Level One and any attachments.
4. All other documents relied upon by the Level One administrator in reaching the Level One decision.

The Level Two administrator shall schedule a conference within ten days after the appeal notice is filed. The conference shall be limited to the issues and documents considered at Level One. At the conference, the individual may provide information concerning any documents or information relied upon by the administration for the Level One decision. The Level Two administrator may set reasonable time limits for the conference.

The Level Two administrator shall provide the individual a written response within ten days following the conference. The written response shall set forth the basis of the decision. In reaching a decision, the Level Two administrator may consider the Level One record, information provided at the Level Two conference, and any other relevant documents or information the Level Two administrator believes will help resolve the complaint.

Recordings of the Level One and Level Two conferences, if any, shall be maintained with the Level One and Level Two records.

### **Level Three**

If the individual did not receive the relief requested at Level Two or if the time for a response has expired, he or she may request a conference with the Superintendent or designee to appeal the Level Two decision.

The appeal notice must be filed in writing, on a form provided by the District, within ten days of the date of the written Level Two response or, if no response was received, within ten days of the Level Two response deadline.

After receiving notice of the appeal, the Level Two administrator shall prepare and forward a record of the Level Two appeal to the Level Three administrator. The individual may request a copy of the Level Two record.

The Level Two record shall include:

1. The Level One record.
2. The notice of appeal from Level One to Level Two.
3. The written response issued at Level Two and any attachments.
4. All other documents relied upon by the Level Two administrator in reaching the Level Two decision.

The Level Three conference shall be an informal conference. The conference may be recorded. The purpose of the Level Three conference is to determine if any administrative resolution is available that the complainant and the administration can agree upon absent further appeal. If a resolution is agreed upon, then the appeal is concluded.

Absent extenuating circumstances, the Level Three administrator shall provide the individual a written response within ten days following the conference.

Recordings of the Level One, Level Two, and Level Three conferences, if any, shall be maintained with the Level One, Level Two, and Level Three records.

#### **Level Four**

If the individual did not receive the relief requested at Level Three or if the time for a response has expired, he or she may appeal the decision to the Board.

The appeal notice must be filed in writing, on a form provided by the District, within ten days of the date of the written Level Three response or, if no response was received, within ten days of the Level Three response deadline.

The Superintendent or designee shall inform the individual of the date, time, and place of the Board meeting at which the complaint will be on the agenda for presentation to the Board.

The Superintendent or designee shall provide the Board the record of the lower level appeals. The individual may request a copy of the Level Three record.

The Level Three record shall include:

1. The Level One record.

2. The Level Two record.
3. The notice of appeal from Level Two to Level Three.
4. The written response issued at Level Three and any attachments.
5. All other documents relied upon by the administration in reaching the Level Three decision.

The appeal shall be limited to the issues and documents considered at Level Three, except that if at the Level Four hearing the administration intends to rely on evidence not included in the Level Three record, the administration shall provide the individual notice of the nature of the evidence at least three days before the hearing.

The District shall determine whether the complaint will be presented in open or closed meeting in accordance with the Texas Open Meetings Act and other applicable law. [See BE]

The presiding officer may set reasonable time limits and guidelines for the presentation, including an opportunity for the individual and administration to each make a presentation and provide rebuttal and an opportunity for questioning by the Board. The Board shall hear the complaint and may request that the administration provide an explanation for the decisions at the preceding levels.

In addition to any other record of the Board meeting required by law, the Board shall prepare a separate record of the Level Four presentation. The Level Four presentation, including the presentation by the individual or his or her representative, any presentation from the administration, and questions from the Board with responses, shall be recorded by audio recording, video/audio recording, or court reporter.

The Board shall then consider the complaint. It may give notice of its decision orally or in writing at any time up to and including the next regularly scheduled Board meeting. If the Board does not make a decision regarding the complaint by the end of the next regularly scheduled meeting, the lack of a response by the Board upholds the administrative decision at Level Three.

**Applicability of  
Criminal Laws**

The criminal laws of the state apply to the areas under the control and jurisdiction of the board. *Education Code 37.101*

**Trespass**

An unauthorized person who trespasses on the grounds of a school district commits a Class C misdemeanor. *Education Code 37.107*

**Refusal of Entry or  
Ejection of  
Unauthorized  
Persons**

A school administrator, school resource officer, or school district peace officer may refuse to allow persons to enter on or may eject a person from property under the district's control if the person refuses to leave peaceably on request and:

1. The person poses a substantial risk of harm to any person; or
2. The person behaves in a manner that is inappropriate for a school setting and:
  - a. The administrator, resource officer, or peace officer issues a verbal warning to the person that the person's behavior is inappropriate and may result in the person's refusal of entry or ejection; and
  - b. The person persists in that behavior.

Identification may be required of any person on property under the district's control.

A district shall maintain a record of each verbal warning issued, including the name of the person to whom the warning was issued and the date of issuance.

At the time a person is refused entry to or ejected from a school district's property, the district shall provide to the person written information explaining the appeal process.

If a parent or guardian of a child enrolled in a school district is refused entry to the district's property, the district shall accommodate the parent or guardian to ensure that the parent or guardian may participate in the child's admission, review, and dismissal committee or in the child's team established under Section 504, Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. Section 794), in accordance with federal law.

The term of a person's refusal of entry to or ejection from a school district's property under this section may not exceed two years.

A district shall post on the district's website and each district campus shall post on any campus website a notice regarding these provisions, including the appeal process.

The board shall adopt a policy that uses the district's existing grievance process [see FNG, GF] to permit a person refused entry to or

ejected from property controlled by the district to appeal such refusal of entry or ejection. The policy must permit a person appealing under this section to address the board in person within 90 days of the commencement of the appeal, unless the appeal is granted before the board considers the appeal.

The board's decision to grant or deny an appeal under this section is final and may only be further appealed under the applicable provisions of Texas Education Code 7.057.

*Education Code 37.105; 19 TAC 103.1207*

**Vehicles on School Property**

A board may bar or suspend a person from driving or parking a vehicle on any school property as a result of the person's violation of any rule or regulation promulgated by the board or set forth in Education Code Chapter 37, Subchapter D. [See CLC] *Education Code 37.106*

**Disruption of Lawful Assembly**

A person commits a Class B misdemeanor if the person, alone or in concert with others, intentionally engages in disruptive activity on the campus or property of a public school.

Disruptive activity means:

1. Obstructing or restraining the passage of persons in an exit, entrance, or hallway of any building without the authorization of the administration of the school;
2. Seizing control of any building or portion of a building to interfere with any administrative, educational, research, or other authorized activity;
3. Preventing or attempting to prevent by force or violence or the threat of violence any lawful assembly authorized by the school administration so that a person attempting to participate in the assembly is unable to participate due to the use of force or violence or due to a reasonable fear that force or violence is likely to occur;
4. Disrupting by force or violence or the threat of force or violence a lawful assembly in progress; or
5. Obstructing or restraining the passage of any person at an exit or entrance to the campus or property or preventing or attempting to prevent by force or violence or by threats thereof the ingress or egress of any person to or from the property or campus without the authorization of the administration of the school.

Free Speech

This provision shall not be construed to infringe upon any right of free speech or expression guaranteed by the constitutions of the United States or the state of Texas.

*Education Code 37.123*

**Disruption of  
Classes**

A person, other than a primary or secondary grade student enrolled in the school, commits a Class C misdemeanor if the person, on school property or on public property within 500 feet of school property, alone or in concert with others, intentionally disrupts the conduct of classes or other school activities. It is an exception to the application of the offense that, at the time the person engaged in the prohibited conduct, the person was younger than 12 years of age.

Disrupting the conduct of classes or other school activities includes:

1. Emitting noise of an intensity that prevents or hinders classroom instruction.
2. Enticing or attempting to entice a student away from a class or other school activity that the student is required to attend.
3. Preventing or attempting to prevent a student from attending a class or other school activity that the student is required to attend.
4. Entering a classroom without the consent of either the principal or the teacher and, through either acts of misconduct or use of loud or profane language, disrupting class activities.

“School property” includes a public school campus or school grounds on which a public school is located, and any grounds or buildings used by a school for an assembly or other school-sponsored activity.

“Public property” includes a street, highway, alley, public park, or sidewalk.

*Education Code 37.124*

**Disruption of  
Transportation**

A person, other than a primary or secondary grade student, commits a Class C misdemeanor if the person intentionally disrupts, prevents, or interferes with the lawful transportation of students to and from school, or to or from activities sponsored by a school, on a vehicle owned and/or operated by a district. It is an exception to the application of the offense that, at the time the person engaged in the prohibited conduct, the person was younger than 12 years of age. *Education Code 37.126*



**Tobacco and  
E-Cigarettes**

A board shall prohibit smoking or using e-cigarettes or tobacco products at a school-related or school-sanctioned activity on or off school property. School personnel shall enforce these policies on school property. *Education Code 38.006* [See FNCD for the definition of e-cigarette.]

Smoking in  
Buildings

A district shall not permit smoking within any indoor facility used for provision of routine or regular kindergarten, elementary, or secondary education or library services to children; or regular or routine health care or day care or early childhood development (Head Start) services to children or for the use of employees who provide such services. *20 U.S.C. 6083; 20 U.S.C. 7183*

*Criminal Penalty*

A person commits an offense if the person is in possession of a burning tobacco product, smokes tobacco, or operates an e-cigarette in a facility of a public school.

*Defense*

It is a defense to prosecution that a district does not have prominently displayed a reasonably sized notice that smoking is prohibited by state law in such place and that an offense is punishable by a fine not to exceed \$500.

*Facilities for  
Extinguishment*

A district shall be equipped with facilities for extinguishment of smoking materials.

*Penal Code 48.01(a)–(c)*

**Alcohol**

A board shall prohibit the use of alcoholic beverages at school-related or school-sanctioned activities on or off school property. *Education Code 38.007(a)* [See FNCF regarding alcohol-free zones.]

Intoxicants

A person commits a Class C misdemeanor if the person possesses an intoxicating beverage for consumption, sale, or distribution while:

1. On the grounds or in a building of a public school; or
2. Entering or inside any enclosure, field, or stadium where any athletic event sponsored or participated in by a public school is being held.

*Education Code 37.122* [See also FNCF]

**Fireworks**

A person may not explode or ignite fireworks within 600 feet of any school unless the person receives authorization in writing from the school. *Occupations Code 2154.251(a)(1)*

**Federal Gun-Free  
School Zones Act**

It is unlawful for any individual knowingly to possess a firearm at a place that the individual knows, or has reasonable cause to believe, is a school zone.

“School zone” means in, or on the grounds of, a school; or within a distance of 1,000 feet from the grounds of a school.

This prohibition does not apply to the possession of a firearm:

1. On private property not part of school grounds;
2. If the individual possessing the firearm is licensed to do so by the state, and the law of the state requires that, before an individual obtains such a license, the law enforcement authorities of the state verify that the individual is qualified under law to receive the license;
3. That is not loaded and in a locked container, or a locked firearms rack that is on a motor vehicle;
4. By an individual for use in a program approved by a school in the school zone;
5. By an individual in accordance with a contract entered into between a school in the school zone and the individual or an employer of the individual;
6. By a law enforcement officer acting in his or her official capacity; or
7. That is unloaded and is possessed by an individual while traversing school premises for the purpose of gaining access to public or private lands open to hunting, if the entry on school premises is authorized by school authorities.

It is unlawful for any person, knowingly or with reckless disregard for the safety of another, to discharge or attempt to discharge a firearm at a place that the person knows is a school zone.

This prohibition does not apply to the discharge of a firearm:

1. On private property not part of school grounds;
2. As part of a program approved by a school in the school zone, by an individual who is participating in the program;
3. By an individual in accordance with a contract entered into between a school in a school zone and the individual or an employer of the individual; or
4. By a law enforcement officer acting in his or her official capacity.

*18 U.S.C. 921(a)(25), .922(q)*

**Possession of  
Weapons**

A person commits a third degree felony if the person knowingly, intentionally, or recklessly possesses or goes with a firearm, location-restricted knife, club, or prohibited weapon [see FNCG]:

1. Onto the physical premises (a building or portion of a building) of a school;
2. Onto any grounds or into a building in which an activity sponsored by a school is being conducted; or
3. On a passenger transportation vehicle of a school.

This offense does not apply if the person is acting pursuant to written regulations or written authorization of a district.

It is not a defense to prosecution that the person possessed a handgun and was licensed to carry a handgun.

*Penal Code 46.03(a)(1), (f)*

A person commits a third degree felony if the person intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly possesses or goes with a location-restricted knife on the premises where a high school sporting event or interscholastic event is taking place, unless the person is a participant in the event and a location-restricted knife is used in the event. [See FNCG] *Penal Code 46.03(a-1)*

**“Premises” Defined**

“Premises,” for purposes of this policy, means a building or a portion of a building. The term does not include any public or private driveway, street, sidewalk or walkway, parking lot, parking garage, or other parking area. *Penal Code 46.035(f)(3)*

**Excepted Persons**

Penal Code 46.03 does not apply to:

1. Peace officers or special investigators regardless of whether engaged in the actual discharge of the officer’s or investigator’s duties;
2. Parole officers while engaged in the actual discharge of the officer’s duties;
3. Community supervision and corrections department officers while engaged in the actual discharge of the officer’s duties;
4. An active judicial officer who is licensed to carry a handgun;
5. An honorably retired peace officer, qualified retired law enforcement officer, federal criminal investigator, or former reserve law enforcement officer who holds a certificate of proficiency and is carrying a photo identification verifying that the officer or investigator qualifies for this exception;

6. The attorney general or a United States attorney, district attorney, criminal district attorney, county attorney, or municipal attorney who is licensed to carry a handgun;
7. An assistant United States attorney, assistant attorney general, assistant district attorney, assistant criminal district attorney, or assistant county attorney who is licensed to carry a handgun;
8. A bailiff designated by an active judicial officer who is licensed to carry a handgun and engaged in escorting the judicial officer;
9. A juvenile probation officer who is authorized to carry a firearm; or
10. A person who is volunteer emergency services personnel if the person is carrying a handgun under the authority of Government Code, Chapter 411, Subchapter H; and engaged in providing emergency services.

*Penal Code 46.15(a)*

Transportation or  
Storage of Firearm  
in School Parking  
Area

A district may not prohibit a person who holds a license to carry a handgun under Government Code, Chapter 411, Subchapter H, from transporting or storing a handgun or other firearm or ammunition in a locked, privately owned or leased motor vehicle in a parking lot, parking garage, or other parking area provided by the district, provided that the handgun, firearm, or ammunition is not in plain view.

This does not authorize a person to possess, transport, or store a handgun, a firearm, or ammunition in violation of Education Code 37.125 or Penal Code 46.03 or 46.035, or other law.

*Education Code 37.0815*

Volunteer  
Emergency  
Services Personnel

A district is not liable in a civil action arising from the discharge of a handgun by an individual who is volunteer emergency services personnel and licensed to carry the handgun under Government Code, Chapter 411, Subchapter H.

The discharge of a handgun by an individual who is volunteer emergency services personnel and licensed to carry the handgun under Subchapter H, Chapter 411, Government Code, is outside the course and scope of the individual's duties as volunteer emergency services personnel.

The district does not waive immunity from suit or liability under the Texas Tort Claims Act or any other law.

“Volunteer emergency services personnel” includes a volunteer firefighter, an emergency medical services volunteer as defined by Health and Safety Code 773.003, and any individual who, as a volunteer, provides services for the benefit of the general public during emergency situations. The term does not include a peace officer or reserve law enforcement officer, as those terms are defined by Occupations Code 1701.001, who is performing law enforcement duties.

*Civil Practice & Remedies Code 112.001; Penal Code 46.01(18)*

**Exhibition of Firearm**

A person commits a third degree felony if, in a manner intended to cause alarm or personal injury to another person or to damage school property, the person intentionally:

1. Exhibits or uses a firearm:
  - a. In or on any property, including a parking lot, parking garage, or other parking area, that is owned by a private or public school; or
  - b. On a school bus being used to transport children to and from school-sponsored activities;
2. Threatens to exhibit or use a firearm in or on property described above or on a bus and was in possession of or had immediate access to the firearm.

A person commits a Class A misdemeanor if the person threatens to exhibit or use a firearm, but was not in possession of or did not have immediate access to the firearm.

*Education Code 37.125*

**Trespass—  
Concealed Carry of  
Handgun**

A license holder commits an offense if the license holder:

1. Carries a concealed handgun on the property of another without effective consent; and
2. Received notice that entry on the property by a license holder with a concealed handgun was forbidden.

An offense under Penal Code 30.06 is a Class C misdemeanor, except that the offense is a Class A misdemeanor if, after entering the property, the license holder was personally given the notice that entry or remaining on the property with a concealed handgun was forbidden and subsequently failed to depart.

**Notice / Sign—  
Concealed Carry of  
Handgun**

For purposes of Penal Code 30.06, a person receives notice if the owner of the property or someone with apparent authority to act for the owner provides notice to the person by oral or written communication.

“Written communication” means:

1. A card or other document on which is written language identical to the following: “Pursuant to Section 30.06, Penal Code (trespass by license holder with a concealed handgun), a person licensed under Subchapter H, Chapter 411, Government Code (handgun licensing law), may not enter this property with a concealed handgun”; or
2. A sign posted on the property that includes the language described above in both English and Spanish, appears in contrasting colors with block letters at least one inch in height, and is displayed in a conspicuous manner clearly visible to the public.

Exception

It is an exception to Penal Code 30.06 that the property on which the license holder carries a concealed handgun is owned or leased by a district and is not a premises or other place on which the license holder is prohibited from carrying the handgun under Penal Code 46.03 or 46.035.

*Penal Code 30.06* [See also FNCG]

Unauthorized  
Notice

A district may not provide notice, by a communication described by Penal Code 30.06 or by any sign expressly referring to that law or to a concealed handgun license, that a license holder carrying a handgun under the authority of Government Code Chapter 411 is prohibited from entering or remaining on a premises or other place owned or leased by the district unless license holders are prohibited from carrying a handgun on the premises or other place by Penal Code 46.03 or 46.035. *Gov’t Code 411.209*

**Trespass—Open  
Carry of Handgun**

A holder of a license to openly carry a handgun commits an offense if the license holder:

1. Openly carries a handgun on property of another without effective consent; and
2. Received notice that entry on the property by a license holder openly carrying a handgun was forbidden.

Notice / Sign—  
Open Carry of  
Handgun

For purposes of Penal Code 30.07, a person receives notice if the owner of the property or someone with apparent authority to act for the owner provides notice to the person by oral or written communication.

“Written communication means”:

1. A card or other document on which is written language identical to the following: “Pursuant to Section 30.07, Penal Code (trespass by license holder with an openly carried handgun),

a person licensed under Subchapter H, Chapter 411, Government Code (handgun licensing law), may not enter this property with a handgun that is carried openly”; or

2. A sign posted on the property that includes the language described above in both English and Spanish, appears in contrasting colors with block letters at least one inch in height, and is displayed in a conspicuous manner clearly visible to the public at each entrance to the property.

An offense under Penal Code 30.07 is a Class C misdemeanor, except that the offense is a Class A misdemeanor if, after entering the property, the license holder was personally given the notice by oral communication that entry or remaining on the property with an openly carried handgun was forbidden and subsequently failed to depart.

Exception

It is an exception to Penal Code 30.07 that the property on which the license holder openly carries the handgun is owned or leased by a governmental entity and is not a premises or other place on which the license holder is prohibited from carrying the handgun under Penal Code 46.03 or 46.035.

*Penal Code 30.07*

**Interscholastic  
Events**

Unless authorized by law, a license holder commits a Class A misdemeanor if the license holder intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly carries a handgun, regardless of whether the handgun is concealed or carried in a shoulder or belt holster, on the premises where a high school, collegiate, or professional sporting event or interscholastic event is taking place.

Penal Code 46.035(b)(2) does not apply if the license holder is a participant in the event and a handgun is used in the event.

*Penal Code 46.035(b)(2)*

**Board Meetings**

Unless authorized by law, a license holder commits a Class A misdemeanor if the license holder intentionally, knowingly, or recklessly carries a handgun, regardless of whether the handgun is concealed or carried in a shoulder or belt holster, in the room or rooms where a meeting of the board is held and if the meeting is an open meeting under the Open Meetings Act.

Penal Code 46.035(c) does not apply unless the license holder was given effective notice under Penal Code 30.06 or 30.07 [see Notice/Sign—Concealed Carry of Handgun and Notice/Sign—Open Carry of Handgun, above].

*Penal Code 46.035(c), (i)*



**Board Authorization** A license holder does not commit a criminal offense under Penal Code 46.035 [see Interscholastic Events and Board Meetings, above] if the person is lawfully carrying a handgun pursuant to a board’s written regulations and authorization. *Att’y Gen. Op. GA-1051 (2014)* [See Handgun Licensees at CKE(LEGAL)]

**Drones** “Small unmanned aircraft” means an unmanned aircraft weighing less than 55 pounds on takeoff, including everything that is on board or otherwise attached to the aircraft.

Federal Law

*Small Unmanned Aircraft*

*Small Aircraft Systems*

“Small unmanned aircraft system” (small UAS) means a small unmanned aircraft and its associated elements (including communication links and the components that control the small unmanned aircraft) that are required for the safe and efficient operation of the small unmanned aircraft in the national airspace system.

The registration, airman certification, and operation of civil small UAS within the United States is subject to 14 C.F.R. Part 107. Part 107 does not apply to the following:

1. Air carrier operations;
2. Any aircraft subject to the provisions of 14 C.F.R. Part 101; or
3. Any operation that a remote pilot in command elects to conduct pursuant to an exemption issued under Section 333 of Public Law 112–95, unless otherwise specified in the exemption.

*14 C.F.R. 107.1, .3*

*Model Aircraft*

A “model aircraft” is an unmanned aircraft that is capable of sustained flight in the atmosphere, flown within visual line of sight of the person operating the aircraft, and flown for hobby or recreational purposes.

Title 14 C.F.R. Part 101, Subpart E prescribes rules governing the operation of a model aircraft (or an aircraft being developed as a model aircraft) that meets all of the following conditions:

1. The aircraft is flown strictly for hobby or recreational use;
2. The aircraft is operated in accordance with a community-based set of safety guidelines and within the programming of a nationwide community-based organization;
3. The aircraft is limited to not more than 55 pounds unless otherwise certified through a design, construction, inspection, flight test, and operational safety program administered by a community-based organization;

4. The aircraft is operated in a manner that does not interfere with and gives way to any manned aircraft; and
5. When flown within five miles of an airport, the operator of the aircraft provides the airport operator and the airport air traffic control tower (when an air traffic facility is located at the airport) with prior notice of the operation.

No person may operate a model aircraft so as to endanger the safety of the national airspace system.

*14 C.F.R. 101.1(5), .41, .43*

State Law

*Regulation  
Limited*

A political subdivision, including a school district, may not adopt or enforce any ordinance, order, or other similar measure regarding the operation of an unmanned aircraft. An ordinance, order, or other similar measure that violates this provision is void and unenforceable. *Gov't Code 423.009(b), (d)*

Exception

A political subdivision may adopt and enforce an ordinance, order, or other similar measure regarding:

1. The use of an unmanned aircraft during a special event;
2. The political subdivision's use of an unmanned aircraft; or
3. The use of an unmanned aircraft near a facility or infrastructure owned by the political subdivision, if the political subdivision:
  - a. Applies for and receives authorization from the Federal Aviation Administration to adopt the regulation; and
  - b. After providing reasonable notice, holds a public hearing on the political subdivision's intent to apply for the authorization.

“Special event” means a festival, celebration, or other gathering that involves the reservation and temporary use of all or a portion of a public park, road, or other property of a political subdivision; and entertainment, the sale of merchandise, food, or beverages, or mass participation in a sports event; and requires a significant use or coordination of a political subdivision's services.

*Gov't Code 423.009(a)(2), (c)*

*Privacy Law*

It is lawful to capture an image using an unmanned aircraft in this state for the reasons listed in Government Code 423.002, including:

1. With the consent of the individual who owns or lawfully occupies the real property captured in the image; or

2. From a height no more than eight feet above ground level in a public place, if the image was captured without using any electronic, mechanical, or other means to amplify the image beyond normal human perception.

*Gov't Code 423.002(a)*

**Access to District Property**

Authorized District officials, including school resource officers and District police officers if applicable, may refuse to allow a person access to property under the District's control in accordance with law.

District officials may request assistance from law enforcement in an emergency or when a person is engaging in behavior rising to the level of criminal conduct.

**Ejection or Exclusion under Education Code 37.105**

In accordance with Education Code 37.105, a District official shall provide a person refused entry to or ejected from property under the District's control written information explaining the right to appeal such refusal of entry or ejection under the District's grievance process.

A person appealing under the District's grievance process shall be permitted to address the Board in person within 90 days of filing the initial complaint, unless the complaint is resolved before the Board considers it. [See FNG and GF]

**Off-Campus Activities**

Employees shall be designated to ensure appropriate conduct of participants and others attending a school-related activity at non-District or out-of-District facilities. Those so designated shall coordinate their efforts with persons in charge of the facilities.

**Prohibitions**

Tobacco and E-Cigarettes

The District prohibits smoking and the use of tobacco products and e-cigarettes on District property, in District vehicles, or at school-related activities.

Weapons

The District prohibits the unlawful use, possession, or display of any firearm, location-restricted knife, club, or prohibited weapon, as defined at FNCG, on all District property and in District vehicles at all times. Violators shall be subject to prosecution to the fullest extent of the law.

*Exceptions*

No violation of this policy occurs when:

1. A Texas handgun license holder stores a handgun or other firearm in a locked vehicle in a parking lot, parking garage, or other parking area provided by the District, as long as the handgun or other firearm is not loaded and not in plain view; or
2. The use, possession, or display of an otherwise prohibited weapon takes place as part of a District-approved activity supervised by proper authorities. [See FOD]

<b>Commercial Signs</b>	<p>A person commits an offense if the person erects or maintains a commercial sign or a sign in violation of Transportation Code Chapters 391 through 395 and the relevant provisions of the Administrative Code. <i>Transp. Code 391.003, .0031, .061, .067, 392.032, 393.005, 394.021; 43 TAC Chapter 21</i></p>
General Definitions	<p>“Commercial sign” means a sign that is:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Intended to be leased, or for which payment of any type is intended to be or is received, for the display of any good, service, brand, slogan, message, product, or company, except that the term does not include a sign that is leased to a business entity and located on the same property on which the business is located; or</li><li>2. Located on property owned or leased for the primary purpose of displaying a sign.</li></ol> <p><i>Transp. Code 391.001(1-a); 43 TAC 21.142(1)</i></p> <p>“Sign” means any structure, display, light, device, figure, painting, drawing, message, plaque, placard, poster, billboard, logo, or symbol that is designed, intended, or used to advertise or inform. <i>Transp. Code 391.001(11-a), 392.001, 393.001, 394.001, 395.002; 43 TAC 21.142(28), .402(17)</i></p> <p>“Electronic sign” means a sign, display, or device that changes its message or copy by programmable electronic or mechanical processes. <i>43 TAC 21.251, .142(5)</i></p> <p>“Directional sign” means a sign that contains only a message that identifies an attraction or activity and provides directional information, such as mileage, route number, or exit number, useful to the traveler in locating the attraction or activity. <i>43 TAC 21.941</i></p>
Interstate or Primary System	<p>A district that wishes to erect or maintain outdoor advertising that is visible from the main-traveled way of the interstate or primary system shall comply with Transportation Code Chapter 391 and 43 Administrative Code Chapter 21, Subchapter I.</p> <p>“Interstate system” means that portion of the national system of interstate and defense highways that is located in this state and is designated officially by the Texas Transportation Commission and approved under Title 23, United States Code.</p> <p>“Primary system” means that portion of connected main highways located in this state that is designated officially by the Texas Transportation Commission and approved under Title 23, United States Code.</p> <p><i>Transp. Code 391.001; 43 TAC 21.142(11), (22)</i></p>

State Highway Right-of-Way	<p>A district that wishes to place or maintain a sign on a state highway right-of-way shall comply with Transportation Code Chapter 392.</p> <p>“State highway right-of-way” means the right-of-way of a highway designated as part of the state highway system. <i>Transp. Code 392.001</i></p>
Public Road	<p>A district that wishes to place a sign on the right-of-way of a public road shall comply with Transportation Code Chapter 393.</p>
Rural Road	<p>A district that wishes to erect or maintain an outdoor sign that is visible from the main-traveled way of a rural road shall comply with Transportation Code Chapter 394 and 43 Administrative Code Chapter 21, Subchapter K.</p> <p>“Rural road” means a road, street, way, or bridge:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. That is located in an unincorporated area;</li><li>2. That is not privately owned or controlled;</li><li>3. Any part of which is open to the public for vehicular traffic; and</li><li>4. That is under the jurisdiction of the state or a political subdivision.</li></ol> <p><i>Transp. Code 394.002; 43 TAC 21.402(16)</i></p>
Toll Road	<p>A district that wishes to erect or maintain an outdoor sign that is visible from the main-traveled way of a toll road and erected for the purpose of having the message seen from the main-traveled way shall comply with any rules adopted by the governing body of the toll road authority under Transportation Code Chapter 395.</p> <p>This provision applies only to a toll road located in a county with a population of 3.3 million or more; or that is adjacent to a county with a population of 3.3 million or more and in which a municipality with a population of more than 60,000 is located. <i>Transp. Code 395.001</i></p>
Electronic Sign	<p>A district that wishes to erect an electronic sign shall comply with 43 Administrative Code, Chapter 21, Subchapter I.</p>
Directional Sign	<p>A district that wishes to erect a directional sign shall comply with 43 Administrative Code, Chapter 21, Subchapter Q.</p>
<b>Charitable Raffles</b>	<p>A raffle is the awarding of one or more prizes by chance at a single occasion among a pool or group of persons who have paid or promised a thing of value for a ticket that represents a chance to win a prize. <i>Occupations Code 2002.002(6)</i></p>

A “qualified nonprofit organization” for purposes of the Charitable Raffle Enabling Act may conduct raffles in accordance with the Act to benefit a district or school. A parent-teacher organization may be qualified to hold such raffles if it meets the requirements of the Act. *Occupations Code 2002.003, 2002.051; Atty. Gen. Op. JM-1176 (1990)* [See also CDC]

**District  
Communications**

When the government speaks, it is not barred by the Free Speech Clause from determining the content of what it says. Government statements and actions that take the form of speech do not create a forum for private speech. The government does not unconstitutionally discriminate on the basis of viewpoint when it chooses to advance permissible goals, even if advancing those goals necessarily discourages alternative goals. The government may exercise its freedom to express its views, even when it receives assistance from private sources for the purpose of delivering a government-controlled message. *Walker v. Tex. Div., Sons of Confederate Veterans, Inc.*, 135 S. Ct. 2239 (2015)



**Promotional  
Activities**

District facilities shall not be used to advertise, promote, sell tickets, or collect funds for any nonschool-related purpose without prior approval of the Superintendent or designee.

[For information relating to nonschool use of facilities, see GKD.]

**Advertising**

For purposes of this policy, "advertising" shall mean a communication designed to attract attention or patronage by the public or school community and communicated through means under the control of the District in exchange for consideration to the District. "Advertising" does not include public recognition of donors or sponsors who have made contributions, financial or otherwise, to the District or school support organizations.

Advertising shall be accepted solely for the purpose of generating revenue for the District and not for the purpose of establishing a forum for communication. The District shall retain final editorial authority to accept or reject submitted advertisements in a manner consistent with the First Amendment. The District shall retain the authority to determine the size and location of any advertising. The District reserves the right to reject advertising that:

1. Is inconsistent with federal or state law, Board policy, District or campus regulations, or curriculum;
2. Is inappropriate in a school setting with a student audience;
3. Advertises products presenting a health hazard;
4. Creates a substantial likelihood of material disruption, including adding to the District's obligations for security and facilities maintenance; or
5. Adds to the District's administrative burden by exposing the District to complaints, controversy, or litigation.

The District shall not accept paid political advertising.

Acceptance of advertising shall not constitute District approval or endorsement of any product, service, organization, or issue referenced in the advertising, nor shall acceptance of advertising from a vendor determine whether the District will purchase goods or services from the vendor through the District's formal procurement process.

[For information relating to school-sponsored publications, see FMA.]

**Sponsorships and  
Donations**

If the District or any campus accepts financial or in-kind donations to support District-sponsored activities, the District reserves the right to acknowledge donors through whatever means the District

deems appropriate. The District retains full editorial control over its acknowledgment or display of donations, even if donors are permitted to suggest text for the acknowledgment.

**CPS Investigations  
at School**

A school official may not refuse to permit a Child Protective Services (CPS) investigator to interview at school a student who is alleged to be a victim of abuse or neglect under Family Code 261. A school official may not require the CPS investigator to permit district personnel to be present at a student interview conducted at school. *Family Code 261.302(b), .303(a); Atty. Gen. Op. DM-476 (1998)*

A person that has confidential locating or identifying information regarding a family that is the subject of a CPS investigation shall release that information to the Texas Department of Family and Protective Services (DFPS) on request. The release of information to DFPS as required by this subsection by a person is not subject to Government Code 552.352 or any other law providing liability for the release of confidential information. *Family Code 261.303(e)*

**CPS Investigations  
of Schools**

On receipt of a report of alleged or suspected child abuse or neglect in a public school, DFPS shall perform an investigation as provided by Family Code 261. Investigations of school personnel or volunteers for child abuse or neglect shall be conducted by CPS in accordance with the procedures adopted in DFPS rule. *Family Code 261.406; 40 TAC 700.401–.412*

Notice to Principal

Prior to conducting an investigation of school personnel or volunteers, CPS shall notify the school principal (or the principal's supervisor if the school principal is an alleged perpetrator) of the fact that a report has been assigned for investigation, the nature of the allegations contained in the report, and the date and time when the investigator plans to visit the school campus to begin the investigation.

The CPS investigator must request that the school principal (or the principal's supervisor) not alert the alleged perpetrator or others regarding the report until the investigator has had an opportunity to interview the alleged perpetrator.

*40 TAC 700.407*

Interviews

School officials or other persons related to the school setting may not interfere with an investigation of a report of child abuse or neglect conducted by DFPS. Interviews and examinations in a school investigation may take place on or off the school premises, as deemed appropriate by the CPS investigator, provided the investigator notifies the school principal (or that individual's supervisor in the event that the principal is the alleged perpetrator) prior to conducting an interview or examination on school premises.

*Participants*

CPS may request that school personnel or volunteers not be present during the interview or examination of an alleged victim, an alleged perpetrator, an adult or child witness, or any other person who may have information relevant to the investigation if the investigator determines that:

1. The presence of school personnel or volunteers would compromise the integrity of the investigation; or
2. A better interview or examination of the child would result without school personnel or volunteers being present.

*Family Code 261.303; 40 TAC 700.409(a)*

Report of Findings

After DFPS has closed the school investigation, DFPS shall provide a report of the investigation, redacted to remove the identity of the reporter, to TEA (Director of Education Investigations). On request, DFPS shall provide a redacted copy of the report to the following:

1. State Board for Educator Certification;
2. The president of the school board;
3. The superintendent; and
4. The school principal, unless the principal is the alleged perpetrator.

Notice need not be provided to a school official if a report of abuse or neglect is closed administratively prior to notification to any school official that a report was received by DFPS.

*40 TAC 700.411(a), (e)*

**Students Taken into Custody**

A child may be taken into custody under Family Code Title 3 (Juvenile Justice Code):

1. Pursuant to an order of the juvenile court.
2. Pursuant to the laws of arrest.
3. By a law enforcement officer, including a school district peace officer, if there is probable cause to believe the student has engaged in a criminal violation, delinquent conduct, conduct indicating a need for supervision, or conduct that violates a condition of probation.
4. By a probation officer, if there is probable cause to believe the student has violated a condition of probation or a condition of release.

5. Pursuant to a directive to apprehend issued by a juvenile court.
6. By a law enforcement officer, to take the child's fingerprints or photograph, as set forth at Family Code 58.0021.

*Family Code 52.01(a), 58.0021*

In addition, a child may be taken into custody without a court order:

1. By an authorized representative of the DFPS, a law enforcement officer, or a juvenile probation officer under the conditions set out in Family Code 262.104, relating to the student's physical health or safety; or
2. As otherwise provided by Family Code Chapter 262 (Suit by Governmental Entity to Protect Health and Safety of Child).

*Family Code Ch. 262*

**Students in Custody**

A person taking a child into custody may, if school is in session and the child is a student, bring the child to the campus to which the child is assigned if the principal, the principal's designee, or a peace officer assigned to the campus agrees to assume responsibility for the child for the remainder of the school day. *Family Code 52.02(a)(7)*